

# Contents

---

Study Steps to Learn a Word . . . . .	1
---------------------------------------	---

Skills Check (Pretest) . . . . .	2
----------------------------------	---

## 1

The Sounds /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, /u/ . . . . .	4
--	---

Spelling Practice . . . . .	5
-----------------------------	---

Spelling and Language <i>consonant clusters</i> . . . . .	6
---	---

Writing on Your Own <i>writing a scary description</i> . . . . .	6
--	---

Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>alphabetical order</i> . . . . .	6
---	---

Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	7
--------------------------------	---

## 2

The Sounds /ī/ and /ā/ . . . . .	8
----------------------------------	---

Spelling Practice . . . . .	9
-----------------------------	---

Spelling and Language <i>synonyms</i> . . . . .	10
---	----

Writing on Your Own <i>writing an opinion paragraph</i> . . . . .	10
---	----

Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>guide words</i> . . . . .	10
--	----

Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	11
--------------------------------	----

## 3

The Sounds /ē/ and /ō/ . . . . .	12
----------------------------------	----

Spelling Practice . . . . .	13
-----------------------------	----

Spelling and Language <i>adding -ed and -ing</i> . . . . .	14
--	----

Writing on Your Own <i>writing a message in code</i> . . . . .	14
--	----

Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>entry</i> . . . . .	14
--	----

Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	15
--------------------------------	----

## 4

**Words with *ed* and *ing*** . . . . . 16

Spelling Practice . . . . .	17
Spelling and Language <i>capitalization and punctuation</i> . . . . .	18
Writing on Your Own <i>writing directions for making a sandwich</i> . . . . .	18
Proofreading <i>finding misspelled words</i> . . . . .	18
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	19

## 5

**The Sounds /s/ and /z/** . . . . . 20

Spelling Practice . . . . .	21
Spelling and Language <i>homophones</i> . . . . .	22
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a friendly letter</i> . . . . .	22
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>pronunciation</i> . . . . .	22
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	23

## 6

**Review**. . . . . 24

Units 1 and 2 . . . . .	24
Units 3 and 4 . . . . .	25
Unit 5 . . . . .	26
Words in Time. . . . .	26
Spelling and Reading <i>reading a description;</i> <i>reading comprehension</i> . . . . .	27
Spelling and Writing <i>writing a description</i> . . . . .	28

## 7

**The Sounds /k/ and /kw/** . . . . . 30

Spelling Practice . . . . .	31
Spelling and Language <i>nouns and verbs</i> . . . . .	32
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a journal entry</i> . . . . .	32
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>definitions</i> . . . . .	32
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	33

## 8

**Plurals . . . . . 34**

Spelling Practice . . . . .	35
Spelling and Language <i>subject-verb agreement</i> . . . . .	36
Writing on Your Own <i>writing an ad</i> . . . . .	36
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>plurals</i> . . . . .	36
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	37

## 9

**Clusters and Digraphs . . . . . 38**

Spelling Practice . . . . .	39
Spelling and Language <i>adjective endings</i> . . . . .	40
Writing on Your Own <i>writing descriptive paragraphs</i> . . . . .	40
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>entry abbreviations</i> . . . . .	40
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	41

## 10

**The Sounds /j/ and /ch/ . . . . . 42**

Spelling Practice . . . . .	43
Spelling and Language <i>plurals</i> . . . . .	44
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a telephone message</i> . . . . .	44
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>definitions</i> . . . . .	44
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	45

## 11

**The Sound /sh/ . . . . . 46**

Spelling Practice . . . . .	47
Spelling and Language <i>capitalization</i> . . . . .	48
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a news story paragraph</i> . . . . .	48
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>guide words</i> . . . . .	48
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	49

<b>12</b>	<b>Review</b> . . . . .	<b>50</b>
	Units 7 and 8 . . . . .	50
	Units 9 and 10 . . . . .	51
	Words in Time. . . . .	51
	Unit 11 . . . . .	52
	Spelling and Reading <i>reading a story; reading comprehension</i> .	53
	Spelling and Writing <i>writing a story</i> . . . . .	54
<b>13</b>	<b>Words with <i>ed</i> and <i>ing</i></b> . . . . .	<b>56</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	57
	Spelling and Language <i>adding -ed and -ing</i> . . . . .	58
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing the first paragraph of a biography</i> .	58
	Proofreading . . . . .	58
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	59
<b>14</b>	<b>The Sounds /oi/ and /ou/</b> . . . . .	<b>60</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	61
	Spelling and Language <i>synonyms</i> . . . . .	62
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a short story</i> . . . . .	62
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>accented syllables</i> . .	62
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	63
<b>15</b>	<b>The Sounds /ōō/ and /ōō/</b> . . . . .	<b>64</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	65
	Spelling and Language <i>word families</i> . . . . .	66
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing an ad</i> . . . . .	66
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>idioms</i> . . . . .	66
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	67



<b>16</b>	<b>“Silent” Letters</b> . . . . .	<b>68</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	69
	Spelling and Language <i>homophones</i> . . . . .	70
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a list and sentences</i> . . . . .	70
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>pronunciations</i> . . . . .	70
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	71
<b>17</b>	<b>Double Letters.</b> . . . .	<b>72</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	73
	Spelling and Language <i>synonyms</i> . . . . .	74
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a short article</i> . . . . .	74
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>syllables</i> . . . . .	74
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	75
<b>18</b>	<b>Review</b> . . . . .	<b>76</b>
	Units 13 and 14. . . . .	76
	Units 15 and 16. . . . .	77
	Words in Time. . . . .	77
	Unit 17 . . . . .	78
	Spelling and Reading <i>reading a business letter;</i> <i>reading comprehension</i> . . . . .	79
	Spelling and Writing <i>writing a business letter</i> . . . . .	80
<b>19</b>	<b>The Sounds /ôr/ and /är/</b> . . . . .	<b>82</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	83
	Spelling and Language <i>analogies</i> . . . . .	84
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing explanatory sentences</i> . . . . .	84
	Proofreading . . . . .	84
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	85

<b>20</b>	<b>The Sound /ûr/</b> . . . . .	<b>86</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	87
	Spelling and Language <i>adding -ed and -ing</i> . . . . .	88
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a poem</i> . . . . .	88
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>definitions</i> . . . . .	88
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	89
<b>21</b>	<b>The Sound /ər/</b> . . . . .	<b>90</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	91
	Spelling and Language <i>possessive nouns</i> . . . . .	92
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing an opinion paragraph</i> . . . . .	92
	Proofreading . . . . .	92
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	93
<b>22</b>	<b>The Sounds /əl/ and /ən/</b> . . . . .	<b>94</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	95
	Spelling and Language <i>homophones</i> . . . . .	96
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a “how-to” paragraph</i> . . . . .	96
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>word history</i> . . . . .	96
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	97
<b>23</b>	<b>Compound Words</b> . . . . .	<b>98</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	99
	Spelling and Language <i>adverbs</i> . . . . .	100
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a poem</i> . . . . .	100
	Proofreading . . . . .	100
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	101

# 24

<b>Review</b> . . . . .	<b>102</b>
Units 19 and 20. . . . .	102
Units 21 and 22. . . . .	103
Words in Time. . . . .	103
Unit 23 . . . . .	104
Spelling and Reading <i>reading story conversation;</i> <i>reading comprehension</i> . . . . .	105
Spelling and Writing <i>writing story conversation</i> . . . . .	106

# 25

<b>Synonyms and Antonyms</b> . . . . .	<b>108</b>
Spelling Practice . . . . .	109
Spelling and Language <i>adjectives</i> . . . . .	110
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a comparison paragraph</i> . . . . .	110
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>run-on entry words</i> . . . . .	110
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	111

# 26

<b>Social Studies Words</b> . . . . .	<b>112</b>
Spelling Practice . . . . .	113
Spelling and Language <i>capitalization</i> . . . . .	114
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a research report</i> . . . . .	114
Proofreading . . . . .	114
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	115

# 27

<b>Prefixes</b> . . . . .	<b>116</b>
Spelling Practice . . . . .	117
Spelling and Language <i>irregular verbs</i> . . . . .	118
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a business letter</i> . . . . .	118
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>primary and secondary accents</i> . . . . .	118
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	119

## 28

**Suffixes** . . . . . 120

Spelling Practice . . . . .	121
Spelling and Language <i>antonyms</i> . . . . .	122
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a paragraph with dialogue</i> . . . . .	122
Proofreading . . . . .	122
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	123

## 29

**Noun Suffixes** . . . . . 124

Spelling Practice . . . . .	125
Spelling and Language <i>word families</i> . . . . .	126
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a persuasive business letter</i> . . . . .	126
Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>idioms</i> . . . . .	126
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	127

## 30

**Review** . . . . . 128

Units 25 and 26. . . . .	128
Units 27 and 28. . . . .	129
Unit 29 . . . . .	130
Words in Time. . . . .	130
Spelling and Reading <i>reading a news story;</i> <i>reading comprehension</i> . . . . .	131
Spelling and Writing <i>writing a news story</i> . . . . .	132

## 31

**Word Families** . . . . . 134

Spelling Practice . . . . .	135
Spelling and Language <i>nouns, verbs, and adjectives</i> . . . . .	136
Writing on Your Own <i>writing a book report</i> . . . . .	136
Proofreading . . . . .	136
Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	137

<b>32</b>	<b>Syllable Patterns</b> . . . . .	<b>138</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	139
	Spelling and Language <i>adding -ed and -ing</i> . . . . .	140
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing the beginning of a story</i> . . . . .	140
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write	
	<i>multiple-meaning words</i> . . . . .	140
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	141
<b>33</b>	<b>Syllable Patterns</b> . . . . .	<b>142</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	143
	Spelling and Language <i>adverbs</i> . . . . .	144
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a descriptive paragraph</i> . . . . .	144
	Proofreading . . . . .	144
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	145
<b>34</b>	<b>Three-Syllable Words</b> . . . . .	<b>146</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	147
	Spelling and Language <i>using plural nouns</i> . . . . .	148
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing a comparison-contrast paragraph</i> . . . . .	148
	Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write <i>syllables</i> . . . . .	148
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	149
<b>35</b>	<b>Language Arts Words</b> . . . . .	<b>150</b>
	Spelling Practice . . . . .	151
	Spelling and Language <i>word study</i> . . . . .	152
	Writing on Your Own <i>writing an opinion paragraph</i> . . . . .	152
	Proofreading . . . . .	152
	Spelling on Your Own . . . . .	153

<b>Review</b> . . . . .	<b>154</b>
Units 31 and 32. . . . .	154
Units 33 and 34. . . . .	155
Words in Time. . . . .	155
Unit 35 . . . . .	156
Spelling and Reading <i>reading directions;</i> <i>reading comprehension</i> . . . . .	157
Spelling and Writing <i>writing directions.</i> . . . .	158
 <b>Spelling Dictionary</b> . . . . .	 <b>161</b>
 <b>Spelling Thesaurus</b> . . . . .	 <b>205</b>
 <b>Writer's Guide</b> . . . . .	 <b>243</b>
Spelling Rules . . . . .	244
Troublesome Words to Spell . . . . .	253
Language: A Glossary of Terms and Examples . . .	254
Grammar . . . . .	254
Sentences	
Nouns	
Verbs	
Verb Tenses	
Irregular Verbs	
Adjectives	
Adverbs	
Vocabulary . . . . .	258
Antonyms	
Synonyms	
Homophones	
Prefixes	
Suffixes	
Word Family	
Analogies	

<b>Dictionary: A Glossary of Terms and Examples . . .</b>	<b>260</b>
Alphabetical Order	
Guide Words	
Entry Word	
Entry	
Pronunciation	
Part of Speech	
Definition	
Example	
Word History	
Pronunciation Key	
Syllables	
<b>Composition . . . . .</b>	<b>263</b>
Guides for the Writing Process . . . . .	263
Prewriting	
Composing	
Revising	
Editing	
Proofreading	
Editing and Proofreading Marks	
<b>A Glossary of Terms and Examples. . . . .</b>	<b>266</b>
Kinds of Sentences	
Paragraph	
Descriptive Paragraph	
How-to Paragraph	
Opinion Paragraph	
Comparison-Contrast Paragraph	
Friendly Letter	
Business Letter	
Journal	
Story	
Conversation	
Biography	
Book Report	
News Story	

Research Report	
Poem	
Advertisement	
Telephone Message	
<b>Mechanics: A Glossary of Rules</b> . . . . .	280
Capital Letters . . . . .	280
Names and Titles of Persons, Names of Pets, and Names of Places	
Names of Days, Months, and Holidays	
Names of Books, Stories, Poems, and Reports	
Punctuation . . . . .	281
Period	
Question Mark	
Exclamation Point	
Commas	
Quotation Marks and Underlines	
Apostrophe	
Colon	
<b>Benson Handwriting</b> . . . . .	284
Manuscript Alphabet. . . . .	284
Cursive Alphabet. . . . .	285



# Study Steps to Learn a Word

---

1

**SAY**

**Say** the word. Listen to each sound. Think about what the word means.

2

**LOOK**

**Look** at the word. See how the letters are made. Try to see the word in your mind.

3

**SPELL**

**Spell** the word to yourself. Think about the way each sound is spelled.

4

**WRITE**

**Write** the word. Copy it from your book. Check the way you made your letters. Write the word again.

5

**CHECK**

**Check** your learning. Cover the word and write it. Did you spell it correctly? If not, do these steps until you know how to spell the word.

# Pretest

## Skills Check

Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

**A.** Read the first word in each row. Then write the letter of the word that has the same vowel sound.

- |                        |                 |                 |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. <b>strap</b> _____  | <b>a.</b> swift | <b>b.</b> brand | <b>c.</b> plot  |
| 2. <b>crop</b> _____   | <b>a.</b> fond  | <b>b.</b> brick | <b>c.</b> track |
| 3. <b>bulb</b> _____   | <b>a.</b> twin  | <b>b.</b> tube  | <b>c.</b> month |
| 4. <b>rice</b> _____   | <b>a.</b> fade  | <b>b.</b> woke  | <b>c.</b> tight |
| 5. <b>cheese</b> _____ | <b>a.</b> pail  | <b>b.</b> feast | <b>c.</b> break |
| 6. <b>glow</b> _____   | <b>a.</b> groan | <b>b.</b> mind  | <b>c.</b> owl   |

**B.** Add *ed* to each word on the left. Add *ing* to each word on the right. Write the words.

- | <b>ed</b>              | <b>ing</b>              |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 7. <b>step</b> _____   | 10. <b>flap</b> _____   |
| 8. <b>scream</b> _____ | 11. <b>invite</b> _____ |
| 9. <b>play</b> _____   | 12. <b>buy</b> _____    |

**C.** Add *ed* and *ing* to each word. Write both words.

13. **try** \_\_\_\_\_
14. **worry** \_\_\_\_\_

**D.** Write the plural of each word.

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 15. <b>month</b> _____ | 16. <b>match</b> _____   |
| 17. <b>story</b> _____ | 18. <b>stomach</b> _____ |
| 19. <b>loss</b> _____  | 20. <b>hobby</b> _____   |

**E.** Take away the consonant letter that begins each word. Add a consonant cluster. Write the new word.

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 21. <b> bend</b> _____ | 22. <b> hid</b> _____  |
| 23. <b> loan</b> _____ | 24. <b> meat</b> _____ |

number right  
A. \_\_\_\_\_ 6

number right  
B. \_\_\_\_\_ 6

number right  
C. \_\_\_\_\_ 4

number right  
D. \_\_\_\_\_ 6

number right  
E. \_\_\_\_\_ 4

**F.** The words that complete each pair of sentences sound alike, but they are not spelled the same. Complete each sentence with the correct homophone.

25. Our jet \_\_\_\_\_ took off from O'Hare Airport.

26. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to see why you want that car.

27. Two of us ate the \_\_\_\_\_ pizza.

28. We dug a \_\_\_\_\_ two feet deep.

29. They didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the jewels.

30. The frame of the building is made of \_\_\_\_\_.

31. Please be sure \_\_\_\_\_ home by five.

32. Here is \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

**G.** Write the word for each pronunciation.

33. /sel'ə-brāt/ \_\_\_\_\_ 34. /en'jin/ \_\_\_\_\_

35. /pich'ər/ \_\_\_\_\_ 36. /dez'ərt/ \_\_\_\_\_

37. /let'is/ \_\_\_\_\_ 38. /pur'fikt/ \_\_\_\_\_

39. /myōō'zik/ \_\_\_\_\_ 40. /ō'shen/ \_\_\_\_\_

**H.** Write a two-syllable word that means the opposite of each word. Then draw a line between the two syllables.

41. sunrise \_\_\_\_\_ 42. private \_\_\_\_\_

43. wide \_\_\_\_\_ 44. remembered \_\_\_\_\_

45. worse \_\_\_\_\_ 46. top \_\_\_\_\_

**I.** Add one of these suffixes to each word. Write new words that mean "someone who does something."

-er      -or      -ist

47. act \_\_\_\_\_ 48. science \_\_\_\_\_

49. art \_\_\_\_\_ 50. skate \_\_\_\_\_

51. sail \_\_\_\_\_ 52. win \_\_\_\_\_

number right  
F. \_\_\_\_\_ 8

number right  
G. \_\_\_\_\_ 8

number right  
H. \_\_\_\_\_ 6

number right  
I. \_\_\_\_\_ 6

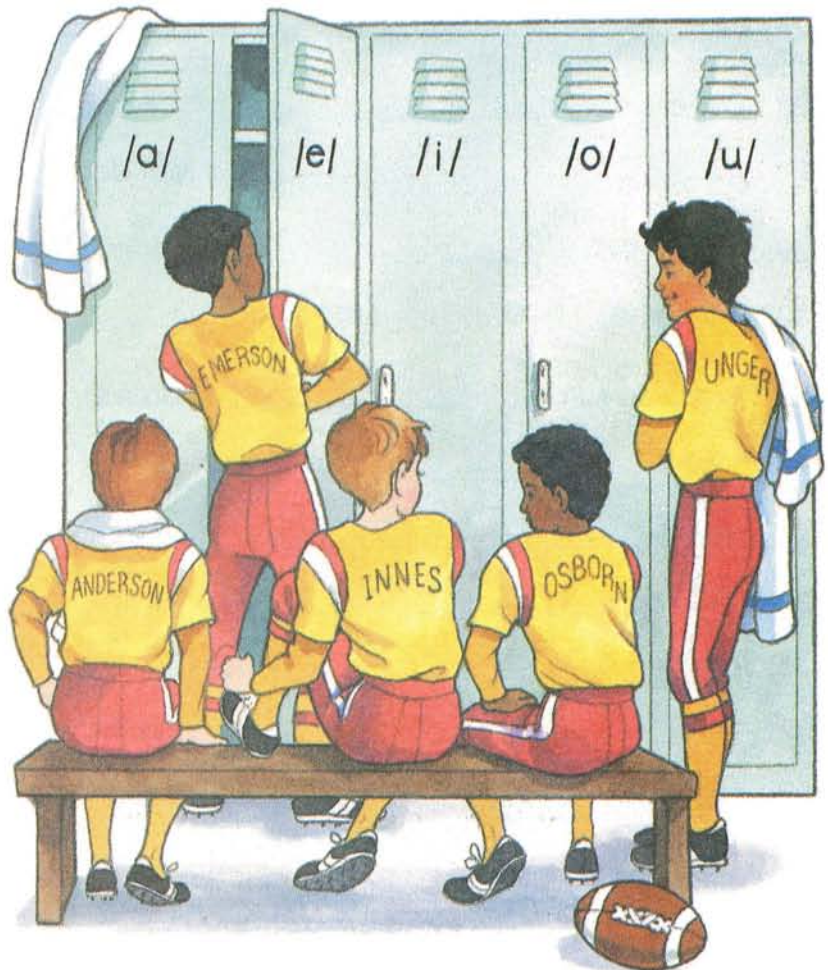
total right  
\_\_\_\_\_ 54

# 1

## The Sounds /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, /u/

### UNIT WORDS

1. *twist*
2. *shift*
3. *solid*
4. *deaf*
5. *blunder*
6. *dusk*
7. *dwell*
8. *tramp*
9. *smash*
10. *extra*
11. *thunder*
12. *flock*
13. *stock*
14. *snag*
15. *scrap*
16. *drift*
17. *timid*
18. *chest*
19. *threat*
20. *surept*



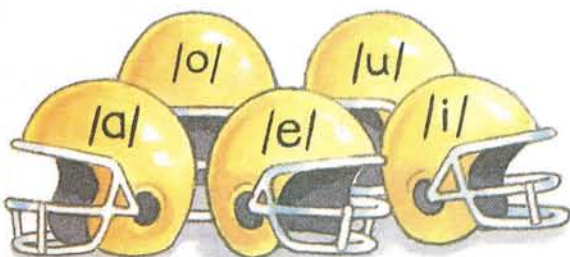
### The Unit Words

The words in this unit have short vowel sounds: /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, or /u/. The letters that appear between the lines / / represent sounds.

The short vowel sound is spelled with one vowel letter in most of the Unit words.

- The sound /a/ is spelled with **a**. *snag*
- The sound /e/ is spelled with **e**. *chest*
- The sound /i/ is spelled with **i**. *twist*
- The sound /o/ is spelled with **o**. *solid*
- The sound /u/ is spelled with **u**. *thunder*

Two of the Unit words have /e/ spelled another way – with **ea** as in *threat*.





# Spelling Practice

**A.** Follow the directions using the Unit words.

1. Write the four words that have the sound /a/.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Write the six words that have the sound /e/. Underline the letter or letters that spell /e/ in each word.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Write the Unit words that rhyme with each of these words.

3. lift (two words) \_\_\_\_\_

4. lock (two words) \_\_\_\_\_

5. under (two words) \_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Write the Unit word for each definition.

6. not hollow \_\_\_\_\_

7. bend \_\_\_\_\_

8. twilight \_\_\_\_\_

9. shy \_\_\_\_\_

10. snow or sand heaped up by the wind \_\_\_\_\_

**D.** Finish these sentences with Unit words.

11. The soccer ball hit Jackie in the \_\_\_\_\_.

12. The heavy door was made of \_\_\_\_\_ wood.

13. Maria got \_\_\_\_\_ pay for working overtime.

14. The \_\_\_\_\_ of rain made us change our plans.

15. The rushing water \_\_\_\_\_ the canoe down river.

**E.** Complete the story with Unit words.

The storm grew worse at 16. A loud clap of 17 scared the 18 of sheep. The poor, 19 animals began to bleat loudly. Were the barn walls 20 enough to stand up to the wind? We decided to 21 the sheep to a safer place.

16. \_\_\_\_\_ 17. \_\_\_\_\_ 18. \_\_\_\_\_

19. \_\_\_\_\_ 20. \_\_\_\_\_ 21. \_\_\_\_\_



## Spelling and Language • Consonant Clusters

### UNIT WORDS

twist  
shift  
solid  
deaf  
blunder  
dusk  
dwell  
tramp  
smash  
extra  
thunder  
flock  
stock  
snag  
scrap  
drift  
timid  
chest  
threat  
swept

Say the word *snag* to yourself. Listen to the consonant sounds /s/ and /n/ at the beginning of *snag*. The letters *sn* in *snag* are a **consonant cluster**. The letters are written together. You hear the two sounds together. Now say *dusk*. The letters *sk* at the end of *dusk* are also a consonant cluster.

Write the Unit words that begin with the same consonant clusters as these words.

1. twin \_\_\_\_\_
2. flap \_\_\_\_\_
3. stamp \_\_\_\_\_
4. bloom \_\_\_\_\_
5. dream \_\_\_\_\_
6. scream \_\_\_\_\_

Write the Unit words that end with the same consonant clusters as these words.

7. west (two words) \_\_\_\_\_
8. lift (two words) \_\_\_\_\_

### Writing on Your Own

Write a scary description for your friends. Put your main character on a quiet road at dusk. Then describe the things that frighten him or her. See if you can give your reader goose bumps! Use some of the Unit words to tell what happens.

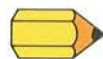
## Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write

The dictionary is a useful tool when you write. To find information in a dictionary, you need to know how it is organized.

The words in a dictionary are listed in **alphabetical order**. To put words in alphabetical order, use the first letter of each word. If the first letters are the same, use the second letter to put words in alphabetical order. If the second letters are the same, use the third letter.

Write each list of words in alphabetical order.

1. swept \_\_\_\_\_  
scrap \_\_\_\_\_  
snag \_\_\_\_\_  
smash \_\_\_\_\_
2. tramp \_\_\_\_\_  
thunder \_\_\_\_\_  
threat \_\_\_\_\_  
timid \_\_\_\_\_



**SPELLING DICTIONARY** Remember to use your **Spelling Dictionary** when you write.





# Spelling on Your Own

## UNIT WORDS

Write sentences using all of the Unit words. Use as many of the words as you can in one sentence, and underline each word. Try to use all of the words in eight sentences. Here's an example: "The *timid flock* ran for cover at the sound of *thunder*."

## MASTERY WORDS

bring  
flag  
dust  
apple  
milk  
club

Follow the directions using the Mastery words.

1. Write the two words that have the sound /a/.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Write the three words that begin with consonant clusters. Circle the word that has /i/.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Write the two words that have the sound /u/. Circle the word that ends in a consonant cluster.

\_\_\_\_\_

Answer the questions using the Mastery words.

4. What American symbol has stars and stripes? \_\_\_\_\_
5. What always comes back after you wipe it away? \_\_\_\_\_
6. What has green, yellow, or red skin? \_\_\_\_\_
7. What drink do you get from cows? \_\_\_\_\_

## BONUS WORDS

instead  
emblem  
plaid  
sponge  
hinder  
against  
ponder  
grudge

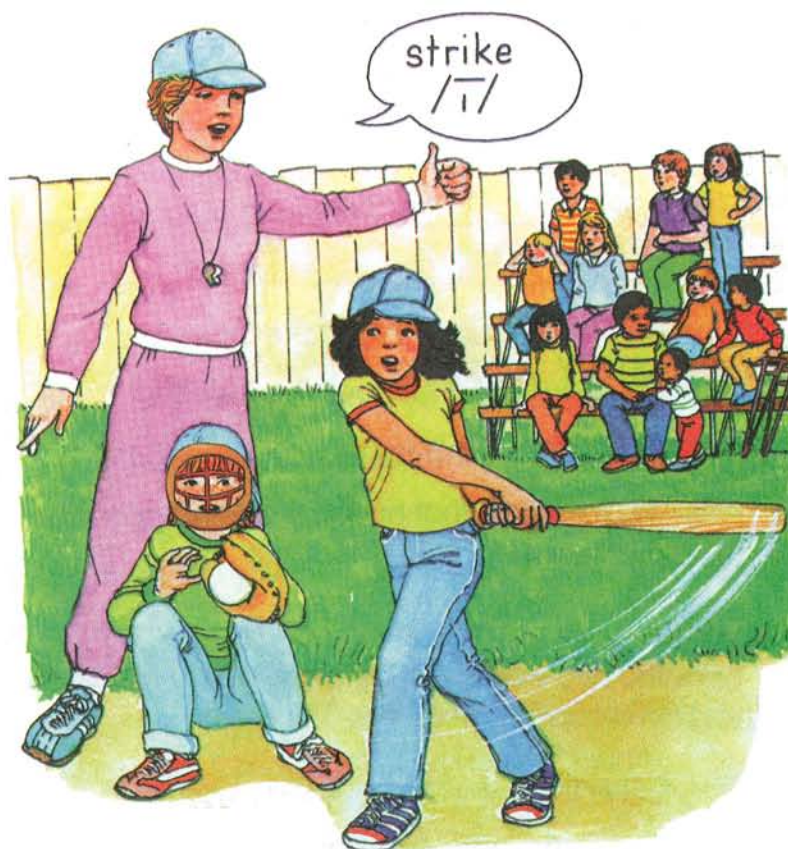
1. Write /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, and /u/ in a column. Next to each vowel sound, write the Bonus words that have that short vowel sound in the syllable said with the most force. Then underline the letter or letters that spell the vowel sound.
2. Write the three words that begin with consonant clusters.
3. Write the Bonus words that are the opposite of *for* and *help*.
4. Write four sentences, using two Bonus words in each sentence.

# 2

## The Sounds /ī/and /ā/

### UNIT WORDS

1. *strike*
2. *fail*
3. *type*
4. *reply*
5. *behave*
6. *debate*
7. *entire*
8. *snail*
9. *spade*
10. *waist*
11. *twine*
12. *desire*
13. *flame*
14. *grave*
15. *hydrogen*
16. *deny*
17. *arrive*
18. *daily*
19. *drain*
20. *style*



### The Unit Words

Each Unit word has a long vowel sound — /ī/ or /ā/. The Unit words show two ways to spell /ī/.

- i-consonant-e as in *strike*
- y as in *type*

The Unit words show two ways to spell /ā/.

- a-consonant-e as in *behave*
- ai as in *daily*

### REMEMBER THIS

Say the word *entire*. The short vowel sound /i/ that you hear at the beginning is spelled **e**. To help you remember how to spell *entire*, use this rhyme:

What you hear in *entire* is not what you see.  
*Entire* begins and ends with an **e**.

*entire*  
 /in·tīr/



## Spelling Practice

**A.** Follow the directions using the Unit words.

1. Write the five words that have /ī/ spelled as it is in *fine*.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Write the five words that have /ī/ spelled with *y*.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Write the word that sounds like *waste*. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Write the other four words that have the sound /ā/ spelled with *ai*.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**B.** Replace the consonant cluster in each of these words with another cluster to spell a Unit word. Write the words.

5. blame \_\_\_\_\_ 6. trade \_\_\_\_\_

7. brave \_\_\_\_\_ 8. trail \_\_\_\_\_

**C.** Add a second syllable to each of these syllables. The syllable you add will have one vowel sound. Write Unit words.

9. be \_\_\_\_\_ 10. en \_\_\_\_\_

11. de (three words) \_\_\_\_\_

**D.** Finish the story with Unit words. The vowel sound is given to help you.

Alonso bought a fresh-water /ā/ 12 for his aquarium. He watches it crawl up the side of the glass tank /ā/ 13. Every week, he and his brother /ā/ 14 the water from the tank. Then they add fresh, warm water. If they /ā/ 15 to change the water, the snail could die. They have no /ī/ 16 to see that happen.



12. \_\_\_\_\_ 13. \_\_\_\_\_ 14. \_\_\_\_\_

15. \_\_\_\_\_ 16. \_\_\_\_\_

## Spelling and Language • Synonyms

### UNIT WORDS

strike  
fail  
type  
reply  
behave  
debate  
entire  
snail  
spade  
waist  
twine  
desire  
flame  
grave  
hydrogen  
deny  
arrive  
daily  
drain  
style

Words that have the same or nearly the same meaning are called **synonyms**. For example, the verbs *drain* and *empty* are synonyms. You could use *drain* in place of *empty* in this sentence: "Please *empty* the water out of the sink." The meaning of the sentence does not change.

Write a Unit word that is a synonym for each word.

1. respond \_\_\_\_\_
2. string \_\_\_\_\_
3. fashion \_\_\_\_\_
4. serious \_\_\_\_\_
5. argue \_\_\_\_\_
6. act \_\_\_\_\_

### Writing on Your Own

Write a paragraph of opinion about a movie. Name the best film you have seen recently. Give at least two reasons why other people should go to see it. Use four or more Unit words in your paragraph. Be sure that you have given good reasons for your opinion.

## Using the Dictionary to Spell and Write

If you want to make sure you use a word correctly in your writing, you can look it up in a dictionary. You can use the guide words to help you.

**Guide words** are the two words found at the top of a dictionary page. The word on the left is the first word on the page. The word on the right is the last word on the page. The rest of the words on the page come between the guide words in alphabetical order.

**amusement**

**a·muse·ment** /ə-myooz'mənt/ *n.* 1 The state of being entertained or amused.

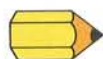
**attitude**

**a·rise** /ə-rīz/ *v.* **a·rose**, **a·ris·en** /ə-rīz'ən/, **a·ris·ing** To get up; to rise.

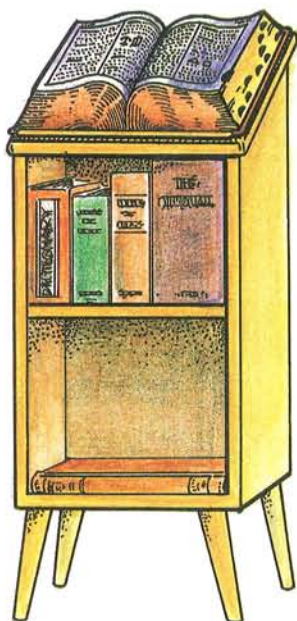
Write the Unit words that would be on a dictionary page that had each of these pairs of guide words. Write the words in alphabetical order.

1. dabble drama
2. soak typhoon
3. effect ice

_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____



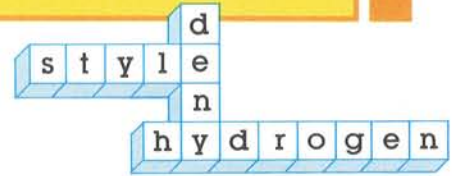
**SPELLING DICTIONARY** Remember to use your **Spelling Dictionary** when you write.



# Spelling on Your Own

## UNIT WORDS

Make a "word puzzle" with the Unit words. Write one word. Use a letter in that word to write another word. Then keep going, writing words across and down. Try to link up all the words.



## MASTERY WORDS

Write the Mastery word that rhymes with each word.

1. race \_\_\_\_\_
2. made \_\_\_\_\_
3. fine \_\_\_\_\_
4. kite \_\_\_\_\_

myself  
snake  
bite  
paid  
line  
space

Follow the directions using the Mastery words.

5. Write the two words that begin with consonant clusters.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Write the word made up of two smaller words. \_\_\_\_\_

Finish the story with Mastery words.

Today, everything went wrong. I 7 for some groceries and forgot to take the change. I cut 8 on the metal fence in the backyard. My 9 crawled out of its tank, and I couldn't find it. My dog took a 10 out of my baseball glove. I waited in 11 for an hour to see a movie. When I got to the front of the line, there was no 12 left in the theater.

7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_
11. \_\_\_\_\_
12. \_\_\_\_\_

## BONUS WORDS

1. Which Bonus word ends with /ī/?
2. Which word names a number?
3. Which word is the opposite of *released*?
4. Which word has four syllables? Remember that each syllable has one vowel sound.
5. Which word is a synonym for *grumble*?
6. Now write your own clues for the other three words. Begin each clue with "Which word..." Write the answer to each clue.

inflate  
complain  
maintain  
ninety  
magnify  
tyrant  
confined  
investigate



Follow these steps when you are unsure how to spell a word.

- **Say** the word. Recall when you have heard the word used. Think about what it means.
- **Look** at the word. Find any prefixes, suffixes, or other word parts you know. Think about other words that are related in meaning and spelling. Try to picture the word in your mind.
- **Spell** the word to yourself. Think about the way each sound is spelled. Notice any unusual spelling.
- **Write** the word while looking at it. Check the way you have formed your letters. If you have not written the word clearly or correctly, write it again.
- **Check** your learning. Cover the word and write it. If you did not spell the word correctly, practice these steps until the word becomes your own.

## UNIT 1

scrap  
solid  
shift  
threat  
thunder  
smash  
dwell  
drift  
dusk  
flock

**UNIT 1** Write words from Unit 1 that have the same vowel sound as each of these words.

1. sun \_\_\_\_\_
2. nap \_\_\_\_\_
3. nod \_\_\_\_\_
4. red \_\_\_\_\_
5. twist \_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT 2** Follow directions using words from Unit 2.

6. Write the three words that have the sound /ī/ spelled y. Circle the words that have two syllables.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Write the two words that have /ā/ spelled a-consonant-e.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Finish these sentences.**

8. Caroline, Maria's pen pal, would \_\_\_\_\_ at 5:00 PM.
9. Caroline's trip would take an \_\_\_\_\_ day; Maria could not \_\_\_\_\_ to be at the airport on time.

## UNIT 2

type  
waist  
behave  
deny  
arrive  
reply  
flame  
daily  
fail  
entire

10. Caroline told Maria that she would wear a white dress with a blue belt around her \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Maria had a schedule of \_\_\_\_\_ events planned.

### UNIT 3 Follow the directions using words from Unit 3.

12. Write the three words that have /ō/ spelled as it is in *boat*.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
13. Write the five words that have the sound /ē/. Circle the letters that make the long vowel sound.  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_
14. Write the two words that have /ō/ spelled o-consonant-e.  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**Finish this story. The long vowel sound of each word is given to help you.**

Have you ever spent a vacation camping? Last summer my family camped near a /ē/ 15 in the mountains. Every night we drank hot /ō/ 16 while we sat around the campfire. I was /ō/ 17 for my friends, but I enjoyed that week in the wilderness.

15. \_\_\_\_\_ 16. \_\_\_\_\_ 17. \_\_\_\_\_

### UNIT 4 Follow the directions using words from Unit 4.

**Add *ing* to these base words. Circle all double consonants.**

18. laugh \_\_\_\_\_ 19. scrub \_\_\_\_\_  
 20. grab \_\_\_\_\_ 21. elect \_\_\_\_\_  
 22. trot \_\_\_\_\_

**Finish these sentences.**

23. We had \_\_\_\_\_ rain for our morning hike, but the sky was bright blue.
24. At this welcome sight, we all started \_\_\_\_\_ our knapsacks and hiking boots.
25. Kim could not stop \_\_\_\_\_ at all the gear I wanted to take.
26. Finally we \_\_\_\_\_ our lunches, packed them, and started off.

#### UNIT 3

squeeze  
throat  
stream  
lonesome  
cocoa  
coast  
vote  
reveal  
creak  
steel



#### UNIT 4

electing  
laughing  
expected  
grabbing  
scrubbing  
wrapped  
jammed  
trotting  
pointed  
reached

## UNIT 5

bicycle  
daisy  
distance  
license  
sense  
citizen  
season  
tense  
closet  
chose



27. After a long climb, we \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the mountain.
28. Kim \_\_\_\_\_ out our starting place far below.
29. That night we all \_\_\_\_\_ into pup tents and slept at the top of the mountain.

### UNIT 5 Follow these directions using words from Unit 5.

30. Write the two words that have /s/ spelled *ce*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
31. Write the four words in which /z/ is spelled *s*.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
32. Write the two words that have both of these sounds: /s/ and /z/.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Finish these sentences.

33. Carlos walked his \_\_\_\_\_ uphill.
34. He was a little \_\_\_\_\_ when he reached the hilltop.
35. He pulled on the helmet that he had found in his \_\_\_\_\_.
36. The downhill ride would be three miles in \_\_\_\_\_.
37. "To think I \_\_\_\_\_ this hill myself!" he sighed.
38. During the descent he had a \_\_\_\_\_ of sitting still while houses and trees flew by.
39. "That was fantastic," thought Carlos at the end of the ride. "I can't wait for racing \_\_\_\_\_ to begin."

### WORDS IN TIME

The word *daisy* comes from two Old English words, *daeges eage*, meaning "the day's eye," or "the sun." Why do you think people first used the words *daeges eage* as a name for the daisy?





## Spelling and Reading

### A Description

**Read the following story. Notice the vivid words that describe the scene.**

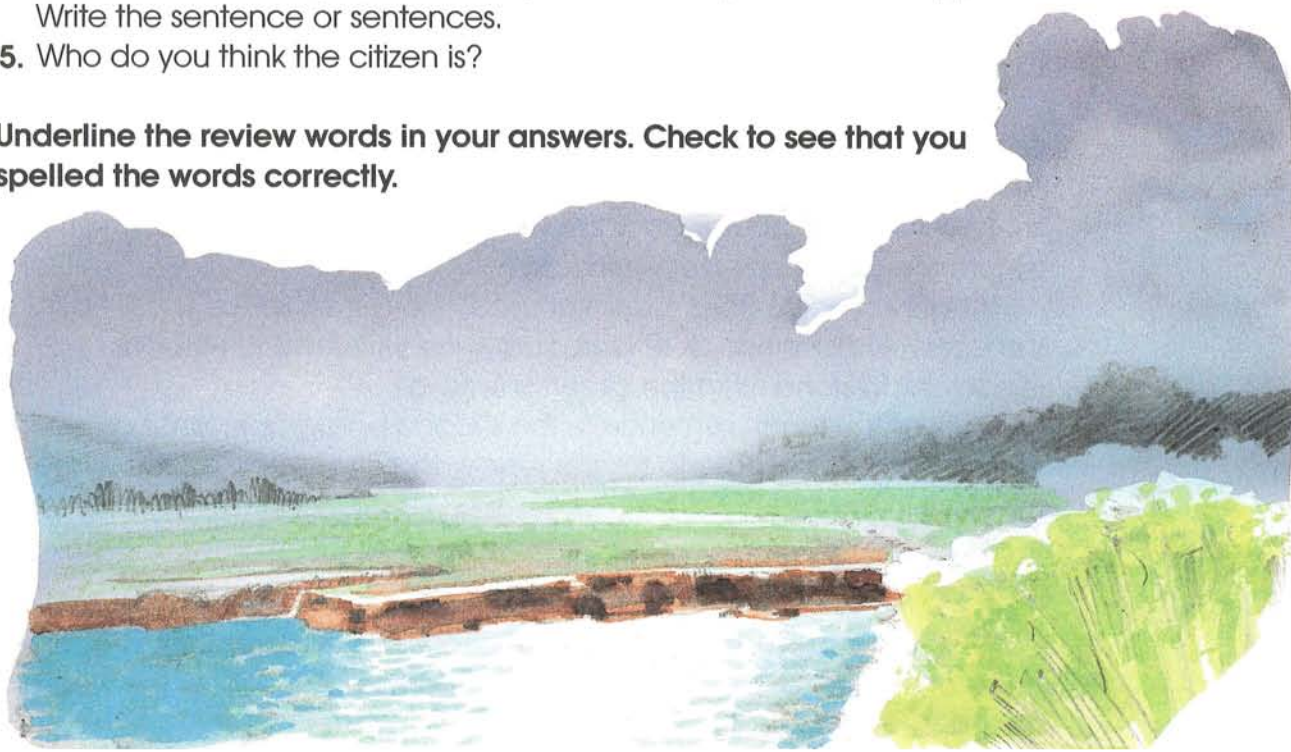
The citizen stood tense and alone by the stream. Her throat was tight and dry. Thunder in the distance and the threat of a storm made waiting on this dark night even harder. "When will they arrive?" she wondered. "I expected them long ago. My people are not the type to behave like this."

Suddenly there was a shift in the wind, and it began grabbing at her clothing. Scraps of paper and leaves swirled around her. She pulled her coat tighter around her waist as she searched the sky. Then a welcome glow appeared high above her. As the light came nearer, the glow took shape, and she could see the ship. Laughing, she waved as the ship touched solid ground. Her lonesome wait was over. With a sigh, she squeezed through the hatch. The ship began to rise. Finally she was going home.

**Write the answers to the questions.**

1. With what picture does the writer begin this description?
2. What makes waiting even harder for the citizen?
3. Why was the citizen nervous and concerned?
4. The suspense builds as the event is told. Find one or more sentences in the second paragraph that tell you something is about to happen. Write the sentence or sentences.
5. Who do you think the citizen is?

**Underline the review words in your answers. Check to see that you spelled the words correctly.**

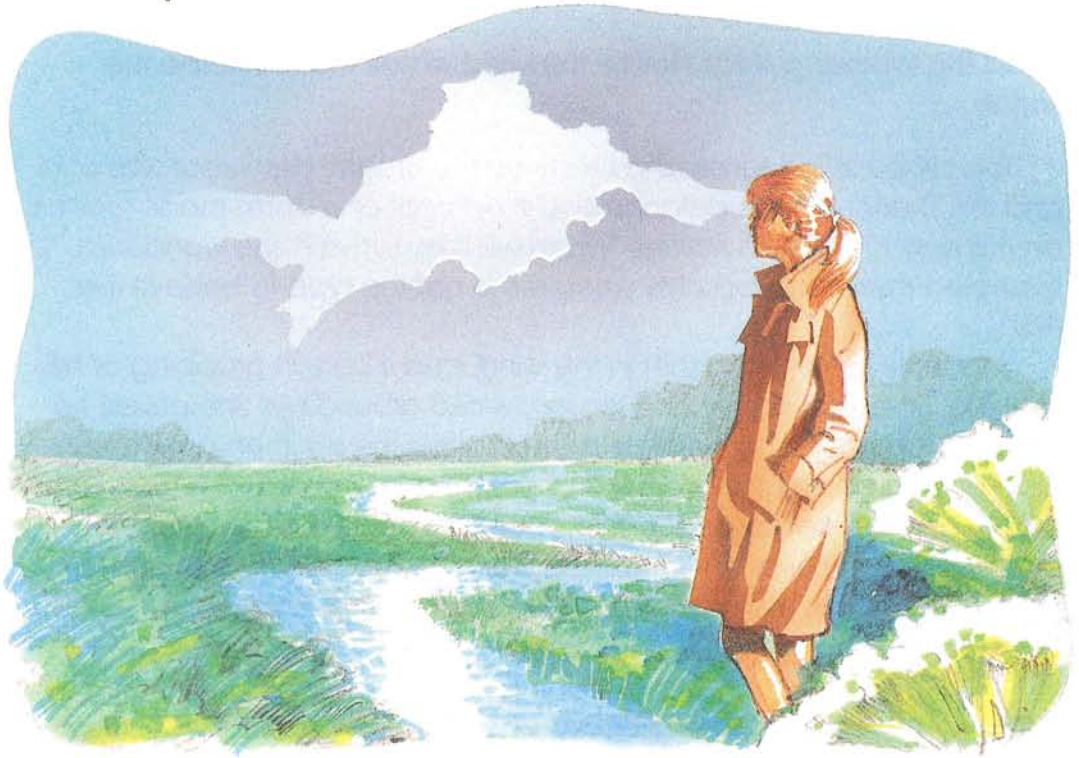


## Spelling and Writing

### A Description

#### Words to Help You Write

smash  
dusk  
behave  
arrive  
reply  
entire  
reveal  
creak  
steel  
wrapped  
pointed  
reached  
sense  
chose  
season



### Think and Discuss

A good description creates a vivid picture for the reader. It helps the reader to see, hear, feel, smell, and taste what is being described. A description comes alive when a writer uses details that appeal to the reader's senses. Good writers choose vivid and colorful words to describe what they want the reader to see, hear, feel, smell, and taste.

Look at the picture. Does it show the scene you pictured when you read the story about the citizen on page 27? The writer uses the words *thunder*, *threat of a storm*, and *dark night* to help the reader see the scene. What other words does the writer use to tell about the scene before the glow appeared in the sky?

What two words does the writer use in the first sentence to tell how the citizen feels? What other words does the writer use to help the reader understand what the citizen is feeling?

Look at the fourth sentence in the second paragraph. What one word does the writer use to tell the reader that the citizen is glad to see the glow in the sky?

### Apply

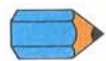
Write a **paragraph of description** for a friend or classmate. Create a sense of mystery or suspense. Use vivid, colorful words. Follow the writing guidelines on the next page.



## Prewriting

Think of some scenes that could be mysterious and choose one.

- Make a chart with five columns labeled *see*, *hear*, *touch*, *smell*, and *taste*. List words in each column that describe the scene.



### THESAURUS

For help finding vivid, colorful words, turn to page 205.

## Composing

Use your chart to write the first draft of your descriptive paragraph.

- Write a topic sentence that clearly tells what your subject is.
- Write detail sentences that describe the scene. Use words that are as vivid and colorful as possible.
- Keep your audience in mind. Use words to make your description mysterious or suspenseful.
- Look back at your prewriting chart. Are there more detail words or sentences you would like to add to your draft?

## Revising

Read your paragraph and show it to a classmate. Follow these guidelines to improve your work. Use the editing and proofreading marks on this page to show corrections.

### Editing

- Make sure your paragraph describes a mysterious or suspenseful scene.
- Check your details. Add words or phrases that will make the word picture more vivid for your reader.

### Proofreading

- Check your spelling and correct any mistakes.
- Check your capitalization and punctuation.



### WRITER'S GUIDE

If you need help with capitalization or punctuation, turn to pages 280 and 281.

Copy your paragraph onto a clean sheet of paper. Write carefully and neatly.

## Publishing

Ask a classmate to read your paragraph and draw the scene you described. Did your words help the reader “see” the scene?

### Editing and Proofreading Marks

≡	capitalize
⊙	make a period
^	add something
^,	add a comma
“”	add quotation marks
—	take something away
○	spell correctly
¶	indent the paragraph
/	make a lowercase letter
~tr	transpose

# SPELLING DICTIONARY



## PRONUNCIATION KEY

Remember these things when you read pronunciations:

- When you see parentheses around a sound, it means that the sound is not always pronounced. /at'ə-t(y)ōd/
- This mark ' comes after the syllable you say with the most force. This lighter mark ' comes after the syllable you say with a little less force. /han'dē-kraft'/

/a/	act, cat	/m/	mother, room	/u/	up, come
/ā/	ate, rain	/n/	new, can	/û/	early, hurt
/â/	care, bear	/ng/	sing, hang	/yōō/	mule, few
/ä/	car, father	/o/	on, stop	/v/	very, five
/b/	bed, rub	/ō/	over, go	/w/	will
/ch/	chair, watch	/ô/	or, saw	/y/	yes
/d/	duck, red	/oi/	oil, toy	/z/	zoo, buzz
/e/	egg, hen	/ou/	out, cow	/zh/	treasure
/ē/	even, see	/ōō/	food, too	/ə/	The schwa
/f/	fish, off	/ōō/	book, pull		is the sound
/g/	go, big	/p/	pig, hop		these letters
/h/	hat, hit	/r/	ran, car		stand for:
/i/	if, sit	/s/	see, miss		a in ago
/ī/	ice, time	/sh/	show, wish		e in listen
/j/	jump, bridge	/t/	take, feet		i in giraffe
/k/	cat, look	/th/	thing, tooth		o in pilot
/l/	lost, ball	/th/	that, weather		u in circus

## Word Histories

A word history explains how a word and its meaning have developed. A word history usually gives the meaning of the older word that the modern English word comes from. This sign ► in a dictionary entry tells you that a word history follows.

### abandon

**a·ban·don** /ə·ban'dən/ *v.* **1** To give up completely: to *abandon* a plan. **2** To desert or leave behind: to *abandon* ship.

### above

**a·bove** /ə·buv'/ **1** *adv.* At a higher place: The clouds *above* look threatening. **2** *prep.* Over: Jim hung his award *above* the couch.



## accent

- ac-cent** /n. ak'sent, v. ak'sent or ak-sent'/ 1 *n.* The stress or force given to some words or syllables in speech. 2 *v.* To say with force: *Accent* the first syllable. 3 *n.* A mark showing where the stress is located in a word, often (') for a strong stress and (˘) for a weaker one.
- ac-ci-den-tal** /ak'sə-den'təl/ *adj.* Happening unexpectedly: Spilling my glass of milk was *accidental*.—**ac'ci-den'tal-ly** *adv.*
- ac-cord-ing** /ə-kôr'ding/ *prep.* With *to*. 1 As stated by or in: *According to* Pat, they had already left. 2 In agreement with: *according to* the law.
- ac-count** /ə-kount'/ *n.* 1 An explanation or description: We gave them a full *account* of our trip. 2 A record of money owed, paid out, or received.
- ache** /āk/ *v.* **ached, ach-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To suffer with a dull, steady pain. 2 *n.* A dull, steady pain.
- a-cre** /ā'kər/ *n.* A unit for measuring area, equal to 43,560 square feet.
- ac-tion** /ak'shən/ *n.* The act of doing something: The doctor's quick *action* saved the man's life.
- ad-di-tion** /ə-dish'ən/ *n.* 1 The act or process of adding: *addition* of fractions. 2 Something added: They built an *addition* onto the house.—**in addition to** Besides.
- ad-dress** /ə-dres'/ 1 *n.* The writing on an envelope or package that tells where and to whom it is to go. 2 *v.* To write an address on a letter or package.
- ad-jec-tive** /əj'ik-tiv/ *n.* A word that describes a noun.
- ad-mit** /ad-mit'/ *v.* **ad-mit-ted, ad-mit-ting** 1 To permit to enter or join. 2 To confess: The criminal *admitted* his guilt.

## ally

- ad-verb** /ad'vûrb/ *n.* A word that tells when, where, or how things happen.
- ad-vice** /ad-vîs'/ *n.* A suggestion made or an opinion given: The coach's *advice* helped me to improve my batting.
- ad-vise** /ad-vîz'/ *v.* **ad-vised, ad-vis-ing** 1 To make suggestions; to give advice: I *advised* her to save money. 2 To inform: *Advise* the staff of the new plan.
- a-fraid** /ə-frād'/ *adj.* Scared.
- a-against** /ə-genst'/ *prep.* 1 Next to; upon: *against* the wall. 2 Not in favor of: *against* an idea.
- age** /āj/ *n.*, *v.* **aged, ag-ing** 1 *n.* The time someone or something has lived. 2 *v.* To grow old. 3 *n.* A period of time in history: the *age* of computers.
- a-gent** /ā'jənt/ *n.* A person or group that has the power to act for another: The actor's *agent* got him a one-million-dollar film contract.
- a-gree-ment** /ə-grē'mənt/ *n.* 1 The result of both sides' agreeing: We were in *agreement* on which movie to see. 2 A contract or treaty.
- ag-ri-cul-tur-al** /ag'rə-kul'chər-əl/ *adj.* Of or having to do with agriculture or farming.
- air-line** /âr'lin'/ *n.* A company that transports people and cargo by air: I fly with that *airline* because of their low rates.
- al-ley** /al'ē/ *n.* 1 The narrow space between or behind buildings. 2 A lane for bowling.
- al-low** /ə-lou'/ *v.* To permit.
- al-ly** /al'ī or ə-lī'/ *v.* **al-lied, al-ly-ing, n.**, *pl.* **al-lies** 1 *v.* To join together for a cause or purpose: The United States *al-lied* itself with England during World War II. 2 *n.* A person or country joined with another for a purpose; a friend: The *allies* made an agreement.

### Abbreviations

*n.* = noun; *pron.* = pronoun; *v.* = verb; *adj.* = adjective; *adv.* = adverb; *prep.* = preposition; *conj.* = conjunction

## amendment

- a-mend-ment** /ə-mend'mənt/ *n.* A change or addition: the first ten *amendments* to the Constitution.
- a-mount** /ə-mount'/ *1 v.* To add up; to total: Your bill *amounts* to \$10. *2 n.* Quantity; total.
- a-muse-ment** /ə-myōōz'mənt/ *n.* *1* The state of being entertained or amused: The seal balanced balls on its nose for our *amusement*. *2* Something that entertains: Listening to music is Gino's favorite *amusement*.
- a-chor** /ang'kər/ *1 n.* A heavy object attached to a boat by a rope and cast overboard to hold the boat in place. *2 v.* To keep in place with an anchor: They decided to *anchor* the boat.
- a-cient** /ān'shənt/ *adj.* *1* Having to do with times long past. *2* Very old.
- a-kle** /ang'kəl/ *n.* The part of the body that joins the foot and the leg.
- a-noy** /ə-noi'/ *v.* To bother.
- a-noy-ing** /ə-noi'ing/ *adj.* Troublesome; irritating: an *annoying* habit.
- a-n-y-more** /en'ē-môr'/ *adv.* At the present time; now: I don't jog *anymore*.
- a-part-ment** /ə-pärt'mənt/ *n.* A room or set of rooms that make up a dwelling.
- a-ple** /ap'əl/ *n.* A round fruit with a thin red, yellow, or green skin: Carla enjoyed having a juicy *apple* as a snack.
- a-ply** /ə-pli'/ *v.* **a-pplied, a-ply-ing**  
*1* To put on: to *apply* a coat of wax.  
*2* To put to a particular use: She *applied* her artistic talent to decorating my house. *3* To make a request: to *apply* for membership.
- a-p-point** /ə-point'/ *v.* To choose someone for a job: The President *appointed* new people to his cabinet.
- a-pron** /ā'prən/ *n.* A garment worn over clothes to protect them. ▶ *Apron* comes from the Middle French word *naperon*, "a small cloth."
- arch-er-y** /är'chər-ē/ *n.* The art or sport of shooting with a bow and arrow.

## attitude

- ar-e-a** /är'ē-ə/ *n.* *1* Region; section of land: the Chicago *area*. *2* The size of a surface: the *area* of a square.
- ar-gue** /är'gyōō/ *v.* **a-r-gued, a-r-gu-ing**  
*1* To disagree. *2* To give reasons for or against: to *argue* for a tax cut.
- a-r-gu-ment** /är'gyə-mənt/ *n.* *1* The act of arguing; quarrel. *2* The reason or reasons for or against something: an *argument* for a larger sports budget.
- a-rise** /ə-riz'/ *v.* **a-rose, a-ris-en** /ə-riz'ən/, **a-ris-ing** To get up; to rise: to *arise* from bed.
- a-r-mor** /är'mər/ *n.* A metal covering to protect the body during fighting.
- a-r-range** /ə-rānj'/ *v.* **a-r-ranged, a-r-rang-ing** *1* To put things in a particular order: to *arrange* the desks. *2* To plan: to *arrange* to meet a friend.
- a-r-ive** /ə-riv'/ *v.* **a-r-rived, a-r-riv-ing**  
*1* To get to a place. *2* To come.
- a-r-tis-tic** /är-tis'tik/ *adj.* *1* Having to do with art or artists: an *artistic* person. *2* Showing skill and good design: an *artistic* job of decorating.
- a-shamed** /ə-shāmd'/ *adj.* Feeling shame; not proud.
- a-sleep** /ə-slēp'/ *adj.* *1* Not awake. *2* Numb: My foot fell *asleep*.
- a-s-sem-bly** /ə-sem'blē/ *n., pl. as-sem-blies* *1* A gathering of people for a specific purpose. *2* A putting together of parts: the *assembly* of a rocket. *3* Part of the legislature in most states.
- a-s-sure** /ə-shōōr'/ *v.* **a-s-sured, a-s-sur-ing** To convince or promise: I *assure* you I'll be home on time.
- a-t-tack** /ə-tak'/ *1 v.* To begin fighting, as in a battle; to hurt. *2 n.* The act of attacking: The *attack* took us by surprise. *3 n.* An unexpected illness: a heart *attack*.
- a-t-ti-tude** /at'ə-t(y)ōōd/ *n.* A way of feeling or looking at things: He has a good *attitude* toward school.



## author

- au·thor** /ô'thər/ *n.* A person who writes original stories, books, etc.  
**au·to·bi·og·ra·phy** /ô'tə·bī·og'rə·fē / *n.*, *pl.* **au·to·bi·og·ra·phies** The story of a person's life written by that person.  
**a·void** /ə·void'/ *v.* To keep away from; to dodge: I try to *avoid* fights.  
**a·ward** /ə·wôrd'/ *1 n.* A prize. *2 v.* To give a prize.

## B

- baf·fle** /baf'əl/ *v.* **baf·fled, baf·fling** To confuse completely; to bewilder.  
**bag·gage** /bag'ij/ *n.* Suitcases and trunks used for traveling; luggage.  
**bak·er·y** /bāk'(ə)·rē/ *n.*, *pl.* **bak·er·ies** A place where breads are baked and sold.  
**bal·let** /bal'ā' or ba·lā'/ *n.* *1* A graceful form of dance. *2* A group that performs this form of dance.  
**bal·lot** /bal'ət/ *n.* *1* A piece of paper on which a voter records his or her choice. *2* The total number of votes in an election.  
**bam·boo** /bam·bōō'/ *n.* A tall grass with hollow woody stems.



- bar·ber** /bār'bər/ *n.* A person who cuts hair.  
**bare·foot** /bār'fōot'/ *adj.*, *adv.* Without shoes or socks.  
**bar·gain** /bār'gən/ *1 n.* An agreement made about a trade or payment. *2 n.*

## between

- Something sold at a lower price than usual; a good buy. *3 v.* To try to get a better price.  
**bark<sup>1</sup>** /bärk/ *1 n.* The sound a dog makes. *2 v.* To make a sound like a dog.  
**bark<sup>2</sup>** /bärk/ *n.* The outside covering of a tree.  
**bar·rel** /bar'əl/ *n.* A round container that is flat at the top and bottom.  
**base·ball** /bās'bôl'/ *n.* *1* A small, hard ball. *2* A team game played by hitting such a ball with a bat.  
**ba·sic** /bā'sik/ *adj.* Forming the basis or most important part: The *basic* tools for home repairs are hammers, screwdrivers, pliers, and saws.  
**ba·sin** /bā'sən/ *n.* *1* A wide bowl used to hold liquids. *2* A sink.  
**bat·ter·y** /bat'ər-ē/ *n.*, *pl.* **bat·ter·ies** An electric cell that produces current.  
**ba·zaar** /bə·zār'/ *n.* A fair to raise money for a certain purpose.  
**beau·ti·ful** /byōō'tə·fəl/ *adj.* Lovely; pretty; full of beauty.  
**bed·room** /bed'rōom'/ *n.* A room for sleeping.  
**be·have** /bi·hāv'/ *v.* **be·haved, be·hav·ing** *1* To act. *2* To act properly.  
**be·low** /bi·lō'/ *1 adv.* At a lower place: From the roof, I watched the parade *below*. *2 prep.* Lower than or under in place or amount: I swam *below* the surface of the water.  
**bend** /bend/ *v.* **bent, bend·ing** *1* To make something curve: I *bent* the nail. *2* To stoop or bow.  
**be·side** /bi·sīd'/ *prep.* Next to: My clock radio is *beside* my bed.  
**be·tween** /bi·twēn'/ *prep.* In the space dividing two things: Sometimes, I snack *between* meals.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôök, fôod; up, tûrn;  
 ə=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôō=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.

## bicycle

**bi-cy-cle** /bī'sik-əl/ *n.* A vehicle with two wheels, pedals, and handlebars.

**bi-og-ra-phy** /bī-og'rə-fē/ *n., pl. bi-og-ra-phies* An account of a person's life.

**bis-cuit** /bis'kit/ *n.* A bread baked in small cakes.

**bite** /bit/ *v. bit, bit-ten or bit, bit-ing, n.*  
1 *v.* To cut with the teeth. 2 *n.* The act of biting. 3 *n.* A wound or sting gotten by biting.

**blan-ket** /blang'kit/ 1 *n.* A large piece of soft cloth usually used to cover a person while sleeping. 2 *n.* Anything that covers like a blanket: a *blanket* of snow. 3 *v.* To cover completely: Dust *blanketed* the furniture.

**blast** /blast/ 1 *n.* A loud noise: the *blast* of a horn. 2 *v.* To make a loud noise: The music was *blasting*. 3 *n.* An explosion. 4 *v.* To blow up with explosives.

**blend** /blend/ 1 *v.* To mix. 2 *n.* A mixture.

**block** /blok/ 1 *n.* A solid piece of wood, stone, etc., with six flat sides. 2 *n.* An area surrounded by four streets. 3 *n.* One side of such an area. 4 *n.* Something that stands in the way. 5 *v.* To be in the way of: The new building *blocks* our view.

**blun-der** /blun'dər/ 1 *n.* A stupid mistake. 2 *v.* To make a blunder.

**blur** /blūr/ *v. blurred, blur-ring, n.* 1 *v.* To smudge; to make messy or unclear. 2 *n.* A fuzzy or unclear image: Until I focused the camera, everything was a *blur*.

**bone-less** /bōn'lis/ *adj.* Without bones.

**book-let** /boōk'lit/ *n.* A small, soft-cover book.

**boost** /boōst/ 1 *v.* To push up or forward: Luis *boosted* his friend over the fence. 2 *n.* A lift.

**bot-tle** /bot'əl/ *n.* A narrow jar with a small opening at the top.

## burden

**bounce** /bouns/ *v. bounced, bounce-ing*  
1 To hit and spring back: I *bounced* up and down on my bed. 2 To cause to bounce: to *bounce* a ball.

**braid** /brād/ 1 *v.* To weave three or more strands together. 2 *n.* Anything twisted like this: a *braid* of hair.

**break-fast** /brek'fəst/ *n.* The first meal of the day.



**breath-less** /breth'lis/ *adj.* Out of breath; holding breath because of fear or excitement.

**bring** /bring/ *v. brought, bring-ing* To carry to or carry along.

**bris-tle** /bris'əl/ *n.* Anything made with stiff hairs: brush *bristles*.

**broil** /broil/ *v.* To cook food near a source of heat: to *broil* a steak.

**broom** /brōom/ *n.* A brush with a long handle, usually used for sweeping.

**bud-dy** /bud'ē/ *n., pl. bud-dies* A close friend.

**bump** /bump/ 1 *v.* To knock against: I *bumped* into the table. 2 *n.* A swelling caused by bumping. 3 *n.* An uneven part: a *bump* in the road.

**bunch** /bunch/ *n.* A number of things of the same kind, growing or placed together: *bunches* of bananas.

**bur-den** /būr'dən/ 1 *n.* Something carried; a load. 2 *n.* Something hard to



## burglar

carry or handle: Working after school was a *burden*. **3 v.** To trouble; I try not to *burden* you with my problems.  
► *Burden* comes from the Old English word *byrthen*, “to carry.”

**bur-glar** /bûr'glər/ *n.* A person who breaks into a building to steal.

**busi-ness** /biz'nis/ **1 n.** A job, profession, or trade. **2 n.** A place where things are produced or sold: a clothing *business*. **3 adj.** Relating to business: a *business* suit.—**mean business** To be serious.

**bus-y** /biz'ē/ *adj.* **bus-i-er, bus-i-est**  
**1** Doing things: We're *busy* making the costumes for the show. **2** Full of things to do: a *busy* afternoon. **3** In use: Your telephone is usually *busy*.

**but-ter** /but'ər/ **1 n.** A yellow spread made from cream. **2 v.** To spread butter on.

## C

**camp** /kamp/ **1 n.** A group of tents or cabins used for vacations. **2 v.** To stay outdoors in a tent or trailer.

**can-dle** /kan'dəl/ *n.* A stick of wax with a wick, or string, for burning.

**cane** /kān/ *n.* **1** A stick people use to help them walk. **2** The woody stem of a plant. **3** Sugar cane.

**ca-noe** /kə-nōē/ *n., v.* **ca-noed, ca-noe-ing** **1 n.** A small, narrow, lightweight boat moved by paddling. **2 v.** To paddle or go in a canoe.

**cap-i-tol** /kap'ə-təl/ *n.* The building in which a state or national legislature meets to make the laws.

**cap-tain** /kap'tən/ *n.* **1** A high officer in the armed forces. **2** A person in command; a leader. ► *Captain* comes from the Latin word *caput*, “head.”

**cap-ture** /kap'chər/ *v.* **cap-tured, cap-tur-ing, n.** **1 v.** To catch; to take

## cellar

prisoner. **2 n.** The act of catching: the *capture* of a robber.

**card** /kärd/ *n.* **1** A piece of stiff paper with writing on it: a birthday *card*.

**2** A card used for playing a game.

**care-free** /kâr'frē'/ *adj.* Without worries; happy: a *carefree* day.

**care-ful** /kâr'fəl/ *adj.* Cautious; taking or done with care: a *careful* driver.

**care-less** /kâr'lis/ *adj.* Reckless; done without care or effort: Todd handed in *careless* work.

**car-ni-val** /kär'nə-vəl/ *n.* A fair or festival with rides and games: They loved riding the Ferris wheel at the *carnival*.

**car-pet** /kär'pit/ **1 n.** A floor covering; rug. **2 v.** To cover with a carpet.

**car-ry** /kar'ē/ *v.* **car-ried, car-ry-ing** To take from one place to another.

**car-ton** /kär'tən/ *n.* A cardboard box or container: a *carton* of milk.

**cart-wheel** /kärt'(h)wēl'/ *n.* A sideways handspring.

**carve** /kärv/ *v.* **carved, carv-ing** **1** To shape wood, marble, etc., by cutting: She *carved* an animal from wood. **2** To cut meat into serving pieces: She *carved* the roast into thin slices.

**cash-ier** /ka-shir'/ *n.* A person who handles money, as in a shop or bank: The *cashier* gave me \$7.60 change.

**cas-tle** /kas'əl/ *n.* A large stone building, usually surrounded by a moat.

**catch** /kach/ *v.* **caught, catch-ing, n.**  
**1 v.** To get hold of: to *catch* a ball. **2 v.** To trap: to *catch* a butterfly in a net. **3 v.** To find: to *catch* a thief. **4 v.** To get an illness: I *caught* a cold. **5 n.** The act of catching.

**cat-tle** /kat'əl/ *n., pl.* **cat-tle** Cows, bulls, and steers.

**cel-lar** /sel'ər/ *n.* An underground room beneath a building; basement.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, ēven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bōok, fōod; up, târn;  
æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## cereal

**ce-re-al** /sir'ē-əl/ *n.* 1 Grain that can be eaten. 2 A food made from grain.

**cer-tain** /sûr'tən/ *adj.* 1 Entirely sure. 2 Not just any: I only drink a *certain* brand of juice.

**chal-lenge** /chal'ənj/ *v.* **chal-lenged, chal-leng-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To ask for a contest or fight; to dare. 2 *n.* A dare: They accepted our team's *challenge*.

**change** /chānj/ *v.* **changed, chang-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To make or become different. 2 *v.* To replace one thing with another. 3 *n.* The money returned when a person gives more than is owed. 4 *n.* Coins.

**char-ac-ter** /kar'ik-tər/ *n.* 1 All of the individual ways of thinking, feeling, and acting that make people *what they are*: Angie is a person of good *character*. 2 A person in a story.

**char-i-ty** /char'ə-tē/ *n., pl. char-i-ties* 1 Good will and love toward others. 2 Kindness in judging people's faults. 3 The giving of help to the poor, sick, or helpless. 4 An organization or fund for helping those in need.

**charm** /chärm/ 1 *n.* The ability to delight. 2 *v.* To delight or please: The host *charmed* his guests. 3 *n.* A word, object, or action believed to have magical powers: a good luck *charm*.

**check-ers** /chek'ərz/ *n., pl.* A game of skill played on a checkerboard by two players. The object is to capture the other player's pieces.



**cheer-ful** /chir'fəl/ *adj.* Happy; full of cheer.

**chem-i-cal** /kem'i-kəl/ 1 *adj.* Having to do with chemistry. 2 *n.* A substance

## clamp

made or used in a laboratory: Most medicines are made of *chemicals*.

**chest** /chest/ *n.* 1 The front part of the body between the neck and the stomach. 2 A box with a lid to hold or store things.

**chew** /chōō/ *v.* To grind up with the teeth.—**chew out** To scold roughly.

**chim-ney** /chim'nē/ *n.* A brick, metal, or stone structure that carries away smoke from fireplaces and furnaces.

**choc-o-late** /chōk'(ə)lit or chok'(ə)lit/ 1 *n.* Roasted and ground cacao nuts. 2 *n.* A drink or candy made from this. 3 *adj.* Made or flavored with this: *chocolate* milk.

**choke** /chōk/ *v.* **choked, chok-ing** 1 To stop someone's breathing by squeezing the throat. 2 To have or cause difficulty in breathing because something is stuck in the throat.

**choose** /chōōz/ *v.* **chose, cho-sen, choos-ing** 1 To pick out. 2 To decide to do something.

**chose** /chōz/ *v.* Past tense of *choose*.

**church** /chûrch/ *n.* A building where Christian people worship.

**cir-cuit** /sûr'kit/ *n.* 1 A route that returns to where it began: The race cars made a *circuit* of the track. 2 The various wires, outlets, and switches in an electrical system.

**cit-i-zen** /sit'ə-zən/ *n.* A person who is a native of a particular country or becomes a member of a country by passing a special test.

**civ-il** /siv'əl/ *adj.* 1 Having to do with being a citizen: *civil* rights. 2 Having to do with legal matters that do not involve a crime: Divorce cases are handled in a *civil* court. 3 Within a country or nation: a *civil* war. 4 Polite: a *civil* answer.

**clamp** /klamp/ 1 *n.* A tool used to hold things together. 2 *v.* To hold in place as with a clamp.

## class

- class** /klas/ *n.* 1 A group of students who are taught together. 2 People or things alike in some way: Reptiles are one *class* of animals.
- clever** /klev'ər/ *adj.* 1 Showing skill: a *clever* idea. 2 Very smart; bright: A chimpanzee is a *clever* animal.
- climb** /klīm/ 1 *v.* To go up. 2 *v.* To go down, over, or into. 3 *n.* The act of climbing.
- closet** /kloz'it/ *n.* A small room where things are stored on hangers or shelves.
- cloud-burst** /klaud'būrst'/ *n.* A sudden, heavy rainfall.
- club** /klub/ *n.* 1 A heavy stick. 2 A stick used to hit a ball: a golf *club*. 3 A group of people who join together: a drama *club*.
- clumsy** /klum'zē/ *adj.* **clum-si-er**, **clum-si-est** Not graceful; awkward. —**clum'si-ly** *adv.* —**clum'si-ness** *n.*
- coal** /kōl/ *n.* 1 A black mineral made mostly of carbon, used as fuel. 2 A hot, glowing piece of coal or wood.
- coast** /kōst/ 1 *n.* Land by or near the ocean. 2 *v.* To roll or slide down a slope without the use of force.
- coastal** /kōs'təl/ *adj.* Of or along a coast: *coastal* waters.
- coax** /kōks/ *v.* To persuade gently and sweetly.
- co-coa** /kō'kō/ *n.* 1 Chocolate powder made from cacao beans. 2 A hot drink made with this powder.
- code** /kōd/ *n., v.* **cod-ed**, **cod-ing** 1 *n.* A set of letters, words, or symbols, used in sending messages. 2 *v.* To put a message into code.
- coin** /koin/ *n.* A piece of metal stamped by a government for use as money.
- collapse** /kə'laps'/ *v.* **col-lapsed**, **col-laps-ing**, *n.* 1 *v.* To fall in or apart. 2 *v.* To fail: The business *collapsed*.

## comic

- 3 *v.* To become weak; to break down: to *collapse* from the heat. 4 *n.* The act of collapsing: the *collapse* of a roof.
- col-lar** /kol'ər/ *n.* 1 A fold of cloth that goes around your neck: The dress has a white *collar*. 2 A band put on an animal's neck.



- col-lect** /kə'lekt'/ *v.* 1 To gather together: to *collect* rocks. 2 To bring together for study or as a hobby: to *collect* stamps. 3 To ask or receive payments: to *collect* dues.
- col-lege** /kol'ij/ *n.* A school of higher learning, usually entered after graduating from high school.
- col-o-ny** /kol'ə-nē/ *n., pl. col-o-nies* 1 A group of people who left their own country to settle somewhere else; a settlement. 2 A land that is ruled by another country.
- col-or-ful** /kul'ər-fəl/ *adj.* Full of colors: a *colorful* sunset.
- com-et** /kom'it/ *n.* A bright heavenly body, with a tail of gaseous elements, that moves in orbit around the sun.



- com-ic** /kom'ik/ 1 *adj.* Funny. 2 *n. (pl.)* A series of drawings that often tell a funny story.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, tûrn;  
 ə=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.

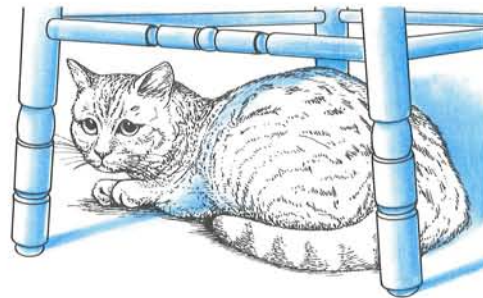


## commerce

- com·merce** /kom'ərs/ *n.* The exchange or buying and selling of goods, especially between nations; trade.
- com·mit·tee** /kə-mit'ē/ *n.* A group of people who volunteer or are chosen to do specific things.
- com·plain** /kəm-plān'/ *v.* **1** To find fault with; to grumble. **2** To report something wrong to a person in authority.
- con·ceal** /kən-sēl'/ *v.* **1** To put out of sight; to hide. **2** To keep secret.
- con·cern** /kən-sŭrn'/ *1 v.* To have to do with. **2 n.** Anything that relates to one; affair; business. **3 v.** To be interested in. **4 v.** To worry. **5 n.** A worry.
- con·cert** /kon'sŭrt/ *n.* A musical performance or program.
- con·fess** /kən-fes'/ *v.* To admit (guilt, love, shame, etc.).
- con·fine** /kən-fīn'/ *v.* **con·fined, con·fin·ing** To keep from going out; to limit: She was *confined* to bed.
- con·fu·sion** /kən-fyoo'zhən/ *n.* A mixed-up or disordered state of mind or of things.
- con·gress** /kong'gris/ *n.* An assembly of people chosen or elected to make laws.
- con·sti·tu·tion** /kon'stə-t(y)oo'shən/ *n.* A document setting forth the basic laws by which a country or organization is governed.
- con·sum·er** /kən-soo'mər/ *n.* A person who uses goods and services.
- con·ti·nent** /kon'tə-nənt/ *n.* One of the major land areas of the earth; Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia, North America, South America, or Antarctica.
- con·tin·ue** /kən-tin'yoo/ *v.* **con·tin·ued, con·tin·u·ing** **1** To keep on. **2** To go on again after a pause or break.
- con·ven·tion** /kən-ven'shən/ *n.* A large meeting held for a specific purpose: a political *convention*.
- cop·y** /kop'ē/ *n., pl. cop·ies, v. cop·ied, cop·y·ing* **1 n.** One thing that looks

## crack

- just like another. **2 n.** One of many things made at one time: a *copy* of a magazine. **3 v.** To make a copy: I *copied* over my report. **4 v.** To imitate.
- cost** /kôst/ *n., v. cost, cost·ing* **1 n.** The amount someone charges or pays for something. **2 v.** To have as its price: The game *costs* \$4.00.
- couch** /kouch/ *n.* A piece of furniture for sitting or sleeping; sofa.
- coun·ter** /koun'tər/ *n.* **1** A long table on which things, especially food or goods, are put. **2** A chip used for counting or keeping score.
- count·less** /kount'lis/ *adj.* Too many to be counted: I've had *countless* meals in the school cafeteria.
- coun·try** /kun'trē/ *n., pl. coun·tries* **1** A nation. **2** The land outside of cities and towns.
- coun·ty** /koun'tē/ *n., pl. coun·ties* An administrative area within a state.
- cov·er** /kuv'ər/ **1 n.** Anything put over something else: a *cover* on the pot. **2 v.** To be put over or to put something over: to *cover* with a blanket.
- cow·ard** /kou'ərd/ *n.* A fearful person; a person with no courage.
- cow·er** /kou'ər/ *v.* To crouch in fear: The cat *cowered* under the chair.



- co·zy** /kō'zē/ *adj. co·zi·er, co·zi·est* Warm and comfortable.
- crack** /krak/ **1 n.** A narrow break: a *crack* in a glass. **2 v.** To break or split apart: to *crack* ice.

## crank

- crank** /krangk/ 1 *n.* A handle for turning that makes a machine work. 2 *v.* To turn using a crank. 3 *n.* A grouchy person.
- crash** /krash/ 1 *n.* A loud noise. 2 *n.* One thing hitting something else. 3 *v.* To hit, making a loud noise.
- creak** /krēk/ 1 *v.* To make a squeaking sound. 2 *n.* A sharp, squeaking sound.
- cred·it** /kred'it/ *n.* Payment over a number of months or years.
- crew** /krōō/ *n.* 1 A group of people who work on a ship. 2 Any group of people working together: a construction *crew*.
- crook** /krōōk/ *n.* A bend or curve.
- crop** /krop/ *n.* Something that is grown on a farm: a *crop* of potatoes.
- cross** /krōs/ 1 *n.* A mark made with two straight lines: +. 2 *v.* To go to the other side: *Cross* the street. 3 *v.* To draw a line through: *Cross* your *t's*. 4 *v.* To put or lay across: *Cross* your fingers. 5 *adj.* Angry.
- crunch·y** /krun'chē/ *adj.* **crunch·i·er**, **crunch·i·est** Crisp.
- crust** /krust/ *n.* 1 The outer part of bread. 2 The shell or cover of a pie.
- crutch** /kruch/ *n.* A support used to help an injured person walk.
- cul·ture** /kul'chēr/ *n.* The way of life of a group of people.
- cun·ning** /kun'ing/ 1 *adj.* Clever or tricky. 2 *n.* Cleverness or slyness.
- cup·board** /kub'ərd/ *n.* A cabinet where dishes or food is kept.
- curb** /kûrb/ *n.* The raised edge of a street.
- cur·tain** /kûr'tən/ *n.* 1 Cloth hung at a window, door, or opening. 2 Cloth used to hide a stage from the audience.
- curve** /kûrv/ *n., v.* **curved**, **cur·ving** 1 *n.* A line that is part of a circle. 2 *n.* Something having the shape of a curve: a *curve* in the path. 3 *v.* To bend: The

## decide

- road *curves* to the left.
- cus·tom·er** /kus'təm·ər/ *n.* A buyer of goods or services.

## D

- dai·ly** /dā'lē/ *adj., adv.* Once a day: a *daily* task; I brush my hair *daily*.
- dai·sy** /dā'zē/ *n., pl. dai·sies* A flower with a round yellow center and white petals.
- dam·age** /dam'ij/ *n., v.* **dam·aged**, **dam·ag·ing** 1 *n.* Harm or injury. 2 *v.* To do or cause damage: The frost *damaged* the orange crop.
- dance** /dans/ *v.* **danced**, **danc·ing**, *n.* 1 *v.* To move in time to music. 2 *n.* A set of steps for dancing: a square *dance*. 3 *n.* A party where people dance.
- dan·ger** /dān'jər/ *n.* Something that can hurt or cause damage.
- dan·ger·ous** /dān'jər·əs/ *adj.* Not safe; able to cause harm.
- dark·ness** /dārk'nīs/ *n.* The condition of being dark or without light.
- deaf** /def/ *adj.* Not able to hear completely or in part.
- deal·er** /dē'lər/ *n.* 1 A person who buys and sells things. 2 A person who gives out playing cards in a game.
- de·bate** /di·bāt/ *v.* **de·bat·ed**, **de·bat·ing**, *n.* 1 *v.* To give reasons for or against; to argue; to consider: We are *debating* about an after-school sports program. 2 *n.* The act of debating: a *debate* between candidates.
- debt** /det/ *n.* 1 Something that is owed by one person to another: a *debt* of \$500. 2 The condition of owing: in *debt* to a bank.
- de·cide** /di·sīd/ *v.* **de·cid·ed**, **de·cid·ing** To make up your mind.

act, âte, câre, ärt;      egg, êven;      if, îce;      on, ôver, ôr;      bōōk, fōōd;      up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen,      î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus;      yōō=u in music;      oil;      out;  
                                  chair; sing; shop; thank; thāt;      zh in treasure.



## deck

**deck** /dek/ *n.* 1 The floor of a ship.  
2 A pack of playing cards.

**dec-o-rate** /dek'ə-rāt/ *v.* **dec-o-rat-ed**,  
**dec-o-rat-ing** 1 To make something  
look beautiful; to trim: to *decorate* a  
Christmas tree. 2 To paint or add  
new furniture to (as a room or house).

**de-crease** /v. di·krēs', *n.* dē'krēs  
or di·krēs'/ *v.* **de-creased**, **de-creas-ing**,  
*n.* 1 *v.* To make or become less: The  
cost of bread has *decreased*. 2 *n.* A  
reduction: a *decrease* in service.

**de-feat** /di·fēt'/ 1 *v.* To beat an enemy or  
opponent: Our baseball team has *de-  
feated* every team in the league. 2 *n.*  
A victory: the Royals' *defeat* of the Ti-  
gers. 3 *n.* A loss: This was our first  
*defeat* after ten wins.

**de-fend** /di·fend'/ *v.* 1 To protect. 2 To  
give reasons in support of: to *defend* an  
opinion. 3 To act as a lawyer for an  
accused person.

**de-lay** /di·lā'/ 1 *v.* To make late: The bad  
weather *delayed* our flight for four  
hours. 2 *v.* To put off until later. 3 *n.*  
The act of delaying.

**de-li-cious** /di·lish'əs/ *adj.* Tasty.

**dent** /dent/ 1 *n.* A part of a hard surface  
that has been pushed in by a blow or by  
pressure: a *dent* in the car. 2 *v.* To  
make or get a dent.

**de-ny** /di·nī'/ *v.* **de-nied**, **de-ny-ing** To  
say that something is not true.

**de-part-ment** /di·pärt'mənt/ *n.* A sepa-  
rate part of a larger whole, as of a com-  
pany, store, or college: the jewelry *de-  
partment*.

**de-pend** /di·pend'/ *v.* To put trust in; to  
rely: to *depend* on a friend.

**de-sire** /di·zīr'/ *v.* **de-sired**, **de-sir-ing**, *n.*  
1 *v.* To wish; to want. 2 *n.* A wish;  
a want.

**desk** /desk/ *n.* A table with drawers, used  
for writing or studying.

**des-sert** /di·zûrt'/ *n.* A sweet food that is  
served at the end of a meal.

## disapprove

**de-vour** /di·vour'/ 1 *v.* To eat greedily:  
The pigeons *devoured* the bread  
crumbs. 2 To destroy: The fire *de-  
voured* every store on the street.

**di-a-logue** /dī'ə·lôg' or dī'ə·log'/ *n.* Con-  
versation involving two or more  
speakers, as in a book or play.



**di-a-ry** /dī'(ə)·rē/ *n., pl.* **di-a-ries** 1 A  
record kept daily of what you do or  
think about. 2 A book for keeping  
such a record.

**dic-tion-ar-y** /dik'shən-er'ē/ *n., pl.*  
**dic-tion-ar-ies** A book of words and  
their meanings in alphabetical order.

**dif-fi-cult** /dif'ə·kult or dif'ə·kəlt/ *adj.*  
Hard to do or understand.

**dim** /dim/ *adj.* **dim-mer**, **dim-mest**, *v.*  
**dimmed**, **dim-ming** 1 *adj.* Not bright:  
a *dim* light. 2 *adj.* Not clearly seen: I  
see a *dim* outline of a cabin. 3 *v.* To  
make or grow dim.

**din-ner** /din'ər/ *n.* The main meal of the  
day; supper.

**di-rec-tion** /di·rek'shən or dī·rek'shən/ *n.*  
1 (*usually pl.*) Instructions. 2 The line  
along which anything moves, faces, or  
lies: He gave me a ride because he was  
going in my *direction*.

**dis-a-gree** /dis'ə·grē'/ *v.* **dis-a-greed**,  
**dis-a-gree-ing** 1 To fail to agree: We  
*disagree* on the answer. 2 To argue.

**dis-ap-pear** /dis'ə·pir'/ *v.* To pass out of  
sight; to vanish: My brother *disap-  
peared* in the crowd.

**dis-ap-prove** /dis'ə·prōv'/ *v.*  
**dis-ap-proved**, **dis-ap-prov-ing** To  
think of something as bad or wrong.

## disconnect

**dis·con·nect** /dis'kə-nekt'/ *v.* To break the connection between; to separate; to unplug: to *disconnect* the TV.

**dis·count** /dis'kount/ **1** *n.* An amount subtracted from the real cost: a twenty-percent *discount* on all books. **2** *v.* To subtract or reduce a part of the cost.



**dis·cour·age** /dis-kûr'ij/ *v.* **dis·cour·aged, dis·cour·ag·ing** To cause to lose courage, hope, or confidence.

**dis·cus·sion** /dis-kush'ən/ *n.* The act of talking over; an exchange of ideas.

**dis·hon·est** /dis-on'ist/ *adj.* Not honest, as someone who lies or cheats.

**dis·like** /dis-lik'/ *v.* **dis·liked, dis·lik·ing** To find unpleasant: I *dislike* sour fruit.

**dis·may** /dis-mā'/ **1** *n.* A feeling of alarm or disappointment: Drew watched the boat sink with *dismay*. **2** *v.* To fill with alarm or disappointment: She was *dismayed* to learn that she lost.

**dis·miss·al** /dis-mis'əl/ *n.* **1** The act of sending away: We had an early *dismissal* because of snow. **2** The act of firing someone from a job.

**dis·o·bey** /dis'ə-bā'/ *v.* To be unwilling or fail to obey.

## drain

**dis·play** /dis-plā'/ **1** *v.* To exhibit or show: to *display* artwork. **2** *n.* A show or exhibit for the public: Anna enjoyed looking at the colorful window *display*.

**dis·sat·is·fy** /dis-sat'is-fi/ *v.* **dis·sat·is·fied, dis·sat·is·fy·ing** To fail to satisfy; to leave discontented: We were *dissatisfied* with our photos.

**dis·tance** /dis'təns/ *n.* **1** The amount of space between two points: a *distance* of two miles. **2** A place far off: I can see an airplane in the *distance*.

**diz·zy** /diz'ē/ *adj.* **diz·zi·er, diz·zi·est** Having the feeling that your head is spinning and you're about to fall. —**diz'zi·ly** *adv.* —**diz'zi·ness** *n.*

**don·key** /dong'kē or dung'kē/ *n.* An animal like a horse but smaller, with longer ears and a shorter mane.

**dou·ble** /dub'əl/ *adj., v.* **dou·bled, dou·bling** **1** *adj.* Twice as much; twice as large: a *double* ice cream cone. **2** *adj.* Having two parts: I cooked pudding in a *double* boiler. **3** *v.* To make twice as great: The coach *doubled* our practice time one week before the big game.

**doubt** /dout/ **1** *v.* To be unsure or uncertain: I *doubt* that he will come. **2** *n.* The condition of being unsure: The outcome was in *doubt*.

**doubt·ful** /dout'fəl/ *adj.* Having doubt; unsure.

**draft** /draft/ *n.* A flow of air: Close the window because I feel a *draft*.

**drag·on** /drag'ən/ *n.* A huge beast, in legend, with wings and claws, that often breathes fire.

**drain** /drān/ **1** *v.* To draw off a liquid slowly: We *drained* water from the pond. **2** *v.* To empty a liquid from something: to *drain* a sink. **3** *n.* A pipe that allows a liquid to be carried off.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, târn;  
æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## draw

- draw** /drô/ *v.* **drew, drawn, draw-ing** To make a picture with a pencil or crayon.
- drew** /drôô/ *v.* Past tense of *draw*.
- drift** /drift/ 1 *v.* To move or float along in water or air. 2 *n.* Snow or sand piled or heaped up by the wind.
- driz-zle** /driz'əl/ *v.* **driz-zled, driz-zling, n.** 1 *v.* To rain lightly but continuously. 2 *n.* A light, continuous rain; mist.
- drop** /drop/ *n., v.* **dropped, drop-ping** 1 *n.* A tiny amount of liquid: a *drop* of water. 2 *v.* To fall or let fall. 3 *v.* To leave out: *Drop the e in taste* before you add *ing*.
- drow-sy** /drou'zē/ *adj.* **drow-si-er, drow-si-est** Sleepy: The long bus ride made me *drowsy*. —**drow'si-ly** *adv.* —**drow'si-ness** *n.*
- dusk** /dusk/ *n.* The time just before night falls; the opposite of *dawn*.
- dust** /dust/ 1 *n.* Tiny pieces of dirt. 2 *v.* To wipe away dust.
- dwarf** /dwôrf/ *n.* A person, animal, or plant much smaller than normal size.
- dwel** /dwel/ *v.* To live or make your home: Birds  *dwell*  in trees.

## E

- ea-sel** /ē'zəl/ *n.* A three-legged frame with a narrow ledge, used to hold an artist's canvas.
- eaves-drop** /ēvz'drop'/ *v.* **eaves-dropped, eaves-drop-ping** To listen in on a conversation secretly.
- e-con-o-my** /i-kon'ə-mē/ *n., pl.* **e-con-o-mies** 1 Use of money or other resources in a way that avoids waste. 2 The management of money and resources: Our new president promises to improve the nation's *economy*.
- ed-i-tor** /ed'i-tər/ *n.* 1 A person who edits or prepares stories and articles for publication. 2 A person who runs a newspaper or a magazine.

## enjoyable

- ed-u-ca-tion** /ej'ôô-kā'shən/ *n.* 1 The act of learning or gaining knowledge. 2 The knowledge and skills gained from being educated.
- e-lect** /i-lekt'/ *v.* 1 To select for an office by voting: We *elect* a mayor every four years. 2 To decide.
- e-lec-tion** /i-lek'shən/ *n.* 1 The selection of a person for an office or an honor by voting. 2 A choice.
- e-lec-tric** /i-lek'trik/ *adj.* 1 Made of or having to do with electricity: an *electric* light. 2 Producing or transmitting electricity: an *electric* current. 3 Operated by electricity: an *electric* guitar.
- el-e-phant** /el'ə-fənt/ *n.* The largest of all land animals, having a very long snout, or trunk, and two ivory tusks.
- else** /els/ 1 *adj.* Other; besides: I won't eat anything *else*. 2 *adv.* Otherwise: Leave now, or *else* you'll be late.
- em-bar-rass** /im-bar'əs/ *v.* To make self-conscious or uncomfortable.
- em-blem** /em'bləm/ *n.* 1 A symbol that stands for an idea, belief, nation, etc.: The eagle is an *emblem* of the United States. 2 A badge with an emblem on it.
- em-per-or** /em'pər-ər/ *n.* The ruler of an empire.
- em-ploy** /im-ploi'/ *v.* To give work and pay to.
- en-cour-age-ment** /in-kûr'ij-mənt/ *n.* Something that gives confidence; the act of giving confidence.
- end-less** /end'lis/ *adj.* Having no end; lasting or going on without stopping: This road seems *endless*.
- en-e-my** /en'ə-mē/ *n., pl.* **en-e-mies** 1 A person or country that tries to harm or fight another. 2 Anything that harms: Some insects are *enemies* of crops.
- en-joy** /in-joi'/ *v.* To take pleasure in: I *enjoy* playing checkers.
- en-joy-a-ble** /in-joi'ə-bəl/ *adj.* Pleasant; satisfying.

## enjoyment

**en·joy·ment** /in·joi'mənt/ *n.* Pleasure; delight: We found *enjoyment* in caring for our neighbors' cats.

**e·nor·mous** /i·nôr'məs/ *adj.* Very large; huge; vast.—**e·nor'mous·ly** *adv.*

**en·ter** /en'tər/ *v.* **1** To come in or go into. **2** To join or participate.

**en·tire** /in-tîr'/ *adj.* In all its parts; whole: the *entire* class.

**en·trance** /en'trəns/ *n.* **1** A door or gate for entering. **2** The act of entering: a sudden *entrance*.

**en·try** /en'trē/ *n., pl. en·tries* **1** The place where a door or gate is located. **2** A word and its meaning in a dictionary. **3** A thing or person entered in a contest.

**en·ve·lope** /en'və-lōp or än'və-lōp/ *n.* A flat paper wrapper having a gummed flap, used to send a letter or card.

**en·vy** /en'vē/ *n., v. en·vied, en·vy·ing* **1 n.** The desire to have what someone else has. **2 v.** To feel envy toward.

**e·qual** /ē'kwəl/ **1 adj.** The same in size, amount, or value. **2 v.** To be or make equal: One pint *equals* two cups.

**e·rode** /i-rōd'/ *v. e·rod·ed, e·rod·ing* To wear away, especially soil or rock by water or wind.



## explorer

**e·ven** /ē'vən/ **1 adj.** Flat and smooth.

**2 adj.** Steady, regular: The plane flew at an *even* speed. **3 adj.** On the same level: This picture is *even* with that one.

**4 adj.** Equal: *even* amounts. **5 adv.** Still: I know an *even* better way of going. **6 v.** To make or become level: *Even* out the cake batter in the pans.

**7 v.** To make equal: His home run *evened* the score.

**ev·er·y·where** /ev'rē-(h)wâr'/ *adv.* In all places; all around: My clothes were scattered *everywhere*.

**e·vil** /ē'vəl/ **1 adj.** Wicked; the opposite of good: *evil* thoughts. **2 n.** Something that is evil; wickedness.

**ex·am·i·na·tion** /ig-zam'ə-nā'shən/ *n.* **1** Careful inspection: I went to the doctor for an *examination*. **2** A test.

**ex·cept** /ik-sept'/ *prep.* Leaving out; other than; but: I've tried every cereal *except* one.

**ex·cite** /ik-sīt'/ *v. ex·cit·ed, ex·cit·ing* To stir up feelings; to make active: Planning the trip *excited* us.

**ex·er·cise** /ek'sər-sīz/ *v. ex·er·cised, ex·er·cis·ing, n.* **1 v.** To develop or train the body or mind by active or repeated movement or use: to *exercise* your legs. **2 n.** Active movement of the body to strengthen it and keep it healthy. **3 n. (usually pl.)** A series of movements done for or as a means of practice: piano *exercises*.

**ex·haust** /ig-zôst'/ **1 v.** To make or become very tired. **2 v.** To use up completely: to *exhaust* the supply of fuel. **3 n.** The fumes or the gases that escape from an engine.

**ex·pect** /ik-spekt'/ *v.* To look forward to as likely to happen.

**ex·plor·er** /ik-splôr'ər/ *n.* A person who seeks to learn or discover something.

act, âte, câre, ârt;

egg, ēven;

if, îce;

on, ōver, ôr;

bōok, fōod;

up, târn;

æ = a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus;

yōo = u in music;

oil; out;

chair; sing; shop; thank; th̄at; zh in treasure.



## expression

- ex·pres·sion** /ik-spresh'ən/ *n.* 1 The act of putting ideas into words: an *expression* of my feelings. 2 A look on the face that shows what a person is feeling: a happy *expression*.
- ex·tend** /ik-stend'/ *v.* 1 To stretch out. 2 To increase in time or space: The bank *extended* its hours.
- ex·te·ri·or** /ik-stir'ē-ər/ 1 *n.* The outside: the *exterior* of the house. 2 *adj.* On or for the outside: the *exterior* surface.
- ex·tra** /ek'strə/ 1 *adj.* Additional: an *extra* key. 2 *n.* A person, thing, or charge in addition to what is needed or expected.
- eye** /ī/ *n., v.* **eyed, eye-ing** 1 *n.* A part of the body by which humans and animals see. 2 *v.* To look at carefully. 3 *n.* Something that is like an eye in some way: The *eye* of a needle. 4 The center: the *eye* of the storm.

## F

- fa·ble** /fā'bəl/ *n.* 1 A tale that teaches a lesson, especially one with animals that behave like people. 2 A made-up story; a lie.
- fail** /fāl/ *v.* 1 To be unsuccessful. 2 To neglect; to omit or forget to do something: Don't *fail* to pick me up at three o'clock. 3 To get a test grade that is below passing.
- fair·ness** /fār'nis/ *n.* The quality of not favoring one group or person over another; the condition of being fair or just.
- faith·ful** /fāth'fəl/ *adj.* Loyal; true: She has always been a *faithful* friend.
- fa·mil·iar** /fə-mil'yər/ *adj.* 1 Well acquainted: I'm *familiar* with Spanish customs. 2 Often seen, heard, or experienced: a *familiar* joke.
- fam·i·ly** /fam'(ə)-lē/ *n., pl. fam-i-lies* 1 Parents and their children. 2 Animals or plants that are related in some way: Donkeys and mules are part of the horse *family*.

## flame

- farm** /färm/ 1 *n.* Land where crops are grown or animals are raised. 2 *v.* To have and run a farm.
- fash·ion** /fash'ən/ *n.* 1 A style of dress popular at a particular time. 2 Way; manner: Sidney organized his records in his own *fashion*.
- fas·ten** /fas'ən/ *v.* 1 To close. 2 To attach.
- fa·vor** /fā'vər/ *n.* A kind act.
- fa·vor·ite** /fā'vər-it or fāv'rit/ 1 *n.* A person or thing that is liked best. 2 *adj.* Best loved or liked.
- fear·ful** /fir'fəl/ *adj.* Frightened; full of fear: I am *fearful* of spiders.
- fear·less** /fir'lis/ *adj.* Brave; without fear: the *fearless* alligator.
- fern** /furn/ *n.* A plant with featherlike leaves and no flowers or seeds.



- fic·tion** /fik'shən/ *n.* Any story about imaginary people and events.
- fi·nal** /fi'nəl/ *adj.* 1 Last: *final* exams. 2 Not to be changed: The results of the election are *final*.
- fin·ger** /fing'gər/ *n.* One of the five end parts that make up the hand.
- fire·place** /fir'plās'/ *n.* A place where a fire is built.
- flag** /flag/ *n., v.* **flagged, flag-ging** 1 *n.* A piece of cloth with special colors and designs on it, used as a symbol of a country or organization. 2 *v.* To stop by signaling: He *flagged* down a police car.
- flame** /flām/ *n., v.* **flamed, flam-ing** 1 *n.* The colored, burning gas that rises from a fire giving off light or heat: the *flame* of a candle. 2 *v.* To rise in

## flashlight

- flames; to blaze: The campfire is *flaming*. **3 n. (pl.)** The condition of burning: The old house is in *flames*.
- flash-light** /flash'lit'/ *n.* A small electric light that runs on batteries.
- flew** /flōō/ *v.* Past tense of *fly*<sup>1</sup>.
- flirt** /flûrt/ **1 v.** To act in a playful, loving way to capture someone's interest. **2 n.** A person who flirts.
- flock** /flok/ **1 n.** A large group of animals or birds. **2 n.** A large crowd of people. **3 v.** To move in a large group: to *flock* around a speaker.
- floun-der**<sup>1</sup> /floun'dər/ *v.* To struggle or move about clumsily: The car *floundered* through the snowdrifts.
- floun-der**<sup>2</sup> /floun'dər/ *n.* A flatfish used as food.
- flur-ry** /flûr'ē/ *n., pl. flur-ries* A light, brief snowfall, often with wind.
- fly**<sup>1</sup> /fli/ *v.* **flew, flown, fly-ing** **1** To go through the air: The moths *flew* toward the bright light. **2** To wave in the air: We *flew* the flag on Memorial Day. **3** To cause to float in the air: I am *flying* my kite. **4** To go by plane.
- fly**<sup>2</sup> /fli/ *n., pl. flies* An insect with two wings that flies.
- fo-li-age** /fō'lē-ij or fō'lij/ *n.* The leaves of a tree or plant.
- force** /fôrs/ *n., v. forced, forc-ing* **1 n.** Power; strength. **2 v.** To break open; to take by strength. **3 v.** To make someone do something. **4 n.** A group of people who do a particular job: a police *force*.
- force-ful** /fôrs'fəl/ *adj.* Strong; energetic: a *forceful* manager.
- fore-warn** /fôr-wôrn'/ *v.* To warn in advance: The announcer *forewarned* us of the approaching storm.
- for-give-ness** /fər-giv'nis/ *n.* Pardon; the act of forgiving.

## furniture

- for-tune** /fôr'chən/ *n.* **1** What is going to happen to a person. **2** Luck or chance. **3** A large amount of money; wealth.
- foul** /foul/ **1 adj.** Very dirty; smelly. **2 adj.** Evil: a *foul* act. **3 adj.** Stormy: *foul* weather. **4 adj.** Not fair; against the rules: a *foul* play. **5 n.** In baseball, a ball that is hit outside a certain area.
- foun-tain** /foun'tən/ *n.* Something that shoots water into the air.



- fowl** /foul/ *n., pl. fowl or fowls* **1** A bird, such as a chicken, duck, or turkey, used as food. **2** Any bird.
- free-dom** /frē'dəm/ *n.* The state of being free; liberty.
- fre-quent** /frē'kwənt/ *adj.* Often. —**fre'quent-ly** *adv.*
- fringe** /frinj/ *n., v. fringed, fring-ing* **1 n.** A decorative border made of threads or cords. **2 n.** Any edge or border: the *fringe* of town. **3 v.** To trim or border: I *fringed* the cuffs with lace.
- fron-tier** /frun-tir'/ *n.* **1** The border between two countries. **2** A settled area that borders on an unsettled area.
- fro-zen** /frō'zən/ **1 v.** Past participle of *freeze*. **2 adj.** Turned into or covered with ice. **3 adj.** Very cold.
- fur-ni-ture** /fûr'nə-chər/ *n.* The large, movable objects in a home or office.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, ēven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, târn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôō=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## further

**fur·ther** /fūr'thər/ *adv.* To a more distant point: Akiko had to read *further* to gather more information.

**fu·ture** /fyōō'chər/ 1 *n.* The time to come. 2 *adj.* Having to do with the future: *future* plans.

## G

**gar·den** /gär'dən/ 1 *n.* A small plot of land where flowers and vegetables are grown. 2 *v.* To work in a garden.

**gel·a·tin** /jel'ə·tin/ *n.* A protein made from animal parts; a substance like jelly used in foods: orange *gelatin*.

**gene** /jēn/ *n.* In plants, animals, and people, a part of a cell that determines the characteristics the offspring will get from parents: a *gene* for blue eyes.

**gen·er·al** /jen'ər·əl/ 1 *adj.* Having to do with everyone. 2 *adj.* Not detailed. 3 *n.* A high officer in an army. ► *General* comes from the Latin word *genus*, "kind or class."

**gen·tle** /jen'təl/ *adj.* Kind and tender.

**gin·ger** /jin'jər/ *n.* A spice made from the root of a tropical plant.

**glis·ten** /glis'tən/ *v.* To sparkle or shine: Water will *glisten* in the sunlight.

**gloom·y** /glōō'mē/ *adj.* **gloom·i·er, gloom·i·est** 1 Dull; dark. 2 Sad.

**gnat** /nat/ *n.* A small biting or stinging fly: The *gnat* bit the girl on the arm.

**goal** /gōl/ *n.* 1 The end of a race. 2 Aim: My *goal* is to become an engineer. 3 In games, a score and the place where it can be made.

**good·ness** /gōōd'nis/ *n.* The condition of being good: Your *goodness* will be rewarded.—**honest to goodness** Really.

**gov·ern·ment** /guv'ər(n)·mənt/ *n.* 1 The management of a country, state, city, etc. 2 The system of this management: a democratic *government*. 3 The officials in a government.

## grumble

**gov·er·nor** /guv'ər·nər/ *n.* The chief elected official of a state.

**grab** /grab/ *v.* **grabbed, grab·bing** To take hold of suddenly: He *grabbed* my hand during the scary movie.

**grace·ful** /grās'fəl/ *adj.* Full of grace in movement; not clumsy: The ballet dancer makes many *graceful* moves as he glides across the stage.

**gra·ci·ous** /grā'shəs/ *adj.* Courteous; polite: a *gracious* hostess.

**gram·mar** /gram'ər/ *n.* The study of words and sentences and their use in speaking and writing.

**grand·moth·er** /gran(d)'muth'ər/ *n.* Your father's or mother's mother.

**grate·ful** /grāt'fəl/ *adj.* Thankful; full of gratitude: a *grateful* child.

**grave** /grāv/ *adj.* **gra·ver, gra·vest** Very important; serious: a *grave* illness.

**grav·el** /grav'əl/ *n.* A mixture of small stones and pebbles.

**graze** /grāz/ *v.* **grazed, graz·ing** To eat grass growing in a meadow: The sheep are *grazing* on the hill.

**grease** /n. grēs, v. grēs or grēz/ *n., v.* **greased, greas·ing** 1 *n.* Animal fat in a soft state. 2 *n.* Any thick, oily substance. 3 *v.* To oil; to apply grease.

**greed·y** /grē'dē/ *adj.* **greed·i·er, greed·i·est** Wanting more than you need.

**greet·ing** /grē'ting/ *n.* 1 The act of welcoming. 2 (*pl.*) A friendly message sent for a special reason.

**gro·cer·y** /grō'sər·ē or grōs'rē/ *n., pl.* **gro·cer·ies** 1 A store that sells food and supplies for the home. 2 (*pl.*) Food and supplies sold in this store.

**grove** /grōv/ *n.* A group of trees.

**growl** /groul/ 1 *n.* A deep, angry sound. 2 *v.* To make such a sound; to snarl.

**grudge** /gruj/ *n.* A feeling of hatred or anger against someone.

**grum·ble** /grum'bəl/ *v.* **grum·bled, grum·bling** 1 To complain in a mumbling way: The impatient man *grum-*



## guard

*bled.* 2 *v.* To make a low, heavy sound: My empty stomach is *grumbling*.

**guard** /gärd/ 1 *v.* To watch over or protect: The officer *guarded* the prisoner. 2 *n.* A person who guards.

**guard-i-an** /gär'dē-ən/ *n.* A person assigned by a court of law to care for someone else, especially a child.

**guess** /ges/ 1 *n.* An idea you have without knowing for sure. 2 *v.* To make a guess. 3 *v.* To suppose: I *guess* he is right.

**gui-tar** /gi-tär'/ *n.* An instrument played by strumming or plucking its strings.

**gust** /gust/ *n.* A strong rush of wind.

## H

**ham-burg-er** /ham'bûr'gär/ *n.*

1 Ground beef. 2 A cooked patty of ground beef, usually eaten on a bun.

**hand-i-craft** /han'dē-kraft/ *n.* 1 Skill in working with the hands. 2 An art or job requiring skillful hands: Weaving cloth is a *handicraft*.

**hand-ker-chief** /hang'kär-chif/ *n.* A small piece of cloth used for cleaning or wiping or for decoration.

**hand-le** /han'dəl/ *v.* **han-dled**, **han-dling**, *n.* 1 *v.* To touch or hold with the hand. 2 *n.* The part of something made to be held by the hand: the *handle* of a pan. 3 *v.* To manage: I can *handle* all of these chores.

**hand-y** /han'dē/ *adj.* **hand-i-er**, **hand-i-est** 1 Within easy reach: I keep a pad and pencil *handy*. 2 Skillful with the hands: Seth is *handy* with clay.

**hap-pen** /hap'ən/ *v.* 1 To take place: What *happened* at school? 2 To take place by chance: We *happened* to meet.

## hesitate

**hap-pi-ness** /hap'ē-nis/ *n.* The feeling of gladness or joy.

**hard-ly** /härd'lē/ *adv.* Almost not at all; barely: My cat *hardly* ever scratches.

**harm-less** /härm'lis/ *adj.* Causing no injury: Garter snakes are *harmless*.

**har-vest** /här'vist/ 1 *n.* The gathering and bringing in of crops. 2 *v.* To gather and bring in a crop. 3 *n.* The amount produced in a season of growing.



**haul** /hól/ *v.* 1 To pull or drag with force: The horses *hauled* the wagon. 2 To move a load, as in a truck.

**head-quar-ters (HQ)** /hed'kwôr'tärz/ *n., pl.* The place from which people direct an organization, such as a police force or a military unit.

**health-ful** /helth'fəl/ *adj.* Contributing to good health: a *healthful* diet.

**heart-less** /härt'lis/ *adj.* Cruel; without kindness.

**help-ful** /help'fəl/ *adj.* Useful; giving help: *helpful* advice.

**help-less** /help'lis/ *adj.* Unable to help oneself: A newborn baby is *helpless*.

**herb** /(h)ûrb/ *n.* The leaves and stems of certain plants, used to flavor food: She baked chicken with fresh *herbs*.

**herd** /hûrd/ 1 *n.* A group of animals all of one kind. 2 *v.* To take care of or keep together a herd.

**hes-i-tate** /hez'ə-tāt/ *v.* **hes-i-tat-ed**, **hes-i-tat-ing** 1 To feel doubtful; to pause: Don't *hesitate* to come. 2 To be unwilling or undecided.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôök, fôod; up, tûrn;  
æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôo=u in music; oil; out;  
chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.

## highway

**high-way** /hī'wā'/ *n.* A main road.



**him-self** /him'self'/ *pron.* His own self:  
Billy cleans up by *himself*.

**hin-der** /hin'dər/ *v.* To interfere with; to block: The mine cave-in *hindered* my search for the treasure.

**hinge** /hinj/ *n.* A joint that allows something to move back and forth, usually on a door or lid.

**his-tor-i-cal** /his-tôr'ə-kəl/ *adj.* Of or having to do with the past or history.

**his-to-ry** /his'tə-rē/ *n., pl. his-to-ries* Past events or the study or record of them.

**hom-o-phone** /hom'ə-fōn/ *n.* A word that sounds like another but has a different spelling and meaning: *Ring* and *wring* are *homophones*.

**hon-est** /on'ist/ *adj.* Truthful; fair.

**hon-or** /on'ər/ 1 *n.* Great respect and admiration; recognition. 2 *v.* To show or give respect and recognition. 3 *n.* An act or sign of high regard: the *honor* of receiving an award.

**hood** /hōd/ *n.* 1 A part attached to a coat, jacket, or sweatshirt that covers the head and back of the neck. 2 Anything that looks or functions like a hood: the *hood* of a car.

**hope-less** /hōp'lis/ *adj.* Not having or giving hope: a *hopeless* cause.

**hor-ror** /hôr'ər/ *n.* The feeling of dread or great fear.

**horse-back** /hōrs'bak'/ *adv.* On the back of a horse: to ride *horseback*.

**hos-pi-tal** /hos'pi-təl/ *n.* A place for the care of the sick and the injured.

## imagination

**hour** /our/ *n.* 1 One of 24 parts of a day; 60 minutes. 2 A particular time. 3 (*pl.*) The time spent at work or school: *business hours*.

**howl** /houl/ 1 *v.* To make a long, loud cry. 2 *n.* The sound of howling.

**hu-mor** /h(y)ōō'mər/ *n.* 1 Something spoken, done, or written that is funny. 2 The ability to see the amusing side of things.

**hun-ger** /hung'gər/ *n.* 1 Weakness caused by lack of food. 2 A desire or need for food.

**hur-dle** /hūr'dəl/ *n.* 1 A standing frame or fence over which horses and people jump: I jumped the highest *hurdle*. 2 A difficulty or problem to be conquered: Overcoming her fear of water was a big *hurdle* for Joan.



**hus-band** /huz'bənd/ *n.* A married man.

**hy-dro-gen** /hī'drə-jən/ *n.* A colorless, odorless gas that combines with oxygen to form water (H<sub>2</sub>O).

**i-de-a** /ī-dē'ə/ *n.* 1 A thought or opinion. 2 A plan or purpose.

**im-ag-i-na-tion** /i-maj'ə-nā'shən/ *n.* 1 The ability or power to picture absent, unknown, or unreal things in the mind. 2 The ability to view things in new ways or to develop new ideas: the *imagination* of a sculptor.



## imagine

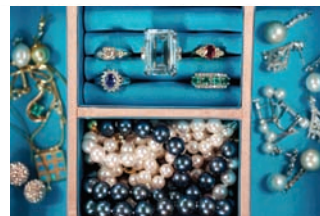
- im·ag·ine** /i·maj'in/ *v.* **im·ag·ined**, **im·ag·in·ing** To have an idea or form a picture in your mind.
- im·mense** /i·mens'/ *adj.* Vast; enormous.
- im·pa·tient** /im·pā'shənt/ *adj.* Not willing to accept delay; not patient.
- in·ac·cu·rate** /in·ak'yər-it/ *adj.* Incorrect; not accurate.
- in·com·plete** /in'kəm·plēt'/ *adj.* Unfinished; not complete.
- in·cor·rect** /in'kə·rekt'/ *adj.* Wrong; not right or correct.
- in·crease** /v. in·krēs', n. in'krēs/ *v.* **in·creased**, **in·creas·ing**, *n.* **1 v.** To make or become greater or larger. **2 n.** A growing or becoming greater or larger in size, quantity, etc.: an *increase* in price.
- in·dus·tri·al** /in·dus'trē·əl/ *adj.* Having to do with industry or manufacturing: *in·dus·tri·al* workers.
- in·flate** /in·flāt'/ *v.* **in·flat·ed**, **in·flat·ing** **1** To fill up with air or gas. **2** To increase or expand a great deal: to *inflate* meat prices.
- in·quire** /in·kwīr'/ *v.* **in·quired**, **in·quir·ing** To ask a question in order to get information: She stopped at the hospital to *inquire* about my health.
- in·sect** /in'sekt/ *n.* A very small animal with six legs and often with wings.
- in·stead** /in·sted'/ *adv.* Rather than; in the place of: Eat fruit *instead* of candy.
- in·te·ri·or** /in·tir'ē·ər/ **1 n.** The inside: the *interior* of a house. **2 adj.** On or for the inside; inner: the *interior* wall.
- in·ter·rupt** /in'tə·rupt'/ *v.* **1** To cause someone to stop doing something. **2** To stop an action.
- in·ven·tor** /in·ven'tər/ *n.* A person who invents or develops something for the first time.
- in·ves·ti·gate** /in·ves'tə·gāt/ *v.*

## jogger

- in·ves·ti·ga·ted**, **in·ves·ti·gat·ing** To search for facts.
- ir·ri·ga·tion** /ir'ə·gā'shən/ *n.* A system for providing land with water through pipes, ditches, or canals.
- is·sue** /ish'oo/ *n., v.* **is·sued**, **is·su·ing** **1 n.** Something sent out regularly: an *issue* of a magazine. **2 v.** To send or give out.
- it·self** /it·self'/ *pron.* Its own self: The goat stumbled and hurt *itself*.

## J

- jam**<sup>1</sup> /jam/ *v.* **jammed**, **jam·ming**, *n.* **1 v.** To press or squeeze things or people together into a small space. **2 n.** A large number of people or things crowded together so that they can't move easily: a traffic *jam*.
- jam**<sup>2</sup> /jam/ *n.* Fruit boiled with sugar until thick: blueberry *jam*.
- jazz** /jaz/ **1 n.** A type of music, started by blacks in the South, that has a strong rhythm with accented notes. **2 adj.** Of or like jazz: a *jazz* band.
- jest** /jest/ **1 n.** A statement or action intended to cause laughter; a joke. **2 v.** To joke; to speak or act playfully.
- jew·el** /joo'əl/ *n.* **1** A precious stone. **2** An ornament set with gems.
- jew·el·ry** /joo'əl·rē/ *n.* Objects worn for decoration, such as necklaces, rings, etc.



- jog·ger** /jog'ər/ *n.* A person who jogs or runs regularly for exercise.

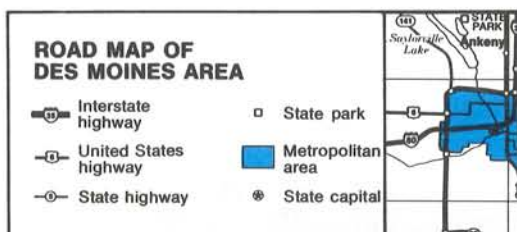
act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôök, fôod; up, târn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.





## labor

- la·bor** /lā'bər/ 1 *n.* Hard work. 2 *v.* To work hard. 3 *n.* Workers in general.
- lan·tern** /lan'tərn/ *n.* An easily carried case, with transparent sides, used to hold and protect a light.
- laugh** /laf/ 1 *v.* To make sounds that show something is funny. 2 *n.* The sound of laughing.
- lead·er** /lē'dər/ *n.* A person who leads or directs.
- lead·er·ship** /lē'dər·ship/ *n.* The ability to lead or guide.
- league**<sup>1</sup> /lēg/ *n.* A number of persons, groups, or countries united for some common purpose: a football *league*.
- league**<sup>2</sup> /lēg/ *n.* A unit for measuring length, equal to about three miles.
- le·gal** /lē'gəl/ *adj.* 1 Having to do with the law: a *legal* contract. 2 Allowed by or based on the law: The *legal* voting age is 18.
- leg·end** /lej'ənd/ *n.* 1 An old story of strange or remarkable happenings that may or may not have some basis in truth. 2 A key or guide accompanying a picture, map, graph, etc.



- lib·er·ty** /lib'ər-tē/ *n.* Freedom: We value our *liberty*.
- li·cense** /lī'səns/ *n., v.* **li·censed, li·cens·ing** 1 *n.* Legal permission to do, be, or own something: a *license* for driving. 2 *n.* A certificate, tag, or plate showing such permission: a dog *license*. 3 *v.* To issue a license: He is *licensed* to sell houses.

## loyal

- lie**<sup>1</sup> /lī/ *v.* **lay, lain, ly·ing** 1 To rest in a flat position: I'm *lying* down for an hour. 2 To be located: Boston *lies* northeast of New York.
- lie**<sup>2</sup> /lī/ *n., v.* **lied, ly·ing** 1 *n.* A false statement. 2 *v.* To tell or write something that is false.
- like·ness** /lik'nīs/ *n.* The condition of being alike: There is a real *likeness* between my father and me.
- lim·it** /lim'it/ 1 *n.* The final point beyond which something cannot go: The speed *limit* is 55 mph. 2 *n.* The largest quantity or amount allowed: There is a *limit* to the number of people that can board this bus. 3 *v.* To restrict; to set a limit to: to *limit* your spending.
- line** /līn/ *n.* 1 A straight mark. 2 A row: The desks are in a *line*.
- liq·uid** /lik'wid/ 1 *n.* Anything, such as water, that can be poured: a fluid. 2 *adj.* Able to be poured: *liquid* soap.
- lit·er·a·ture** /lit'ər-ə·chər or lit'rə·chər/ *n.* Written works in general, including plays, poems, etc.
- loaf** /lōf/ *n., pl. loaves* 1 Bread baked in one piece. 2 Any food shaped like a loaf: meat *loaf*.
- log·ic** /loj'ik/ *n.* 1 The study of reasoning and proving. 2 A way of thinking through a problem.
- lone·some** /lōn'səm/ *adj.* Feeling lonely.
- long** /lōng/ 1 *adj.* Not short: a *long* walk. 2 *adj.* Having a certain length: 8 feet *long*. 3 *adv.* For a long time: We didn't stay *long*.
- loose** /lōos/ *adj.* **loos·er, loos·est** 1 Not tied. 2 Not tight. 3 Not firmly in place. 4 Free.—**turn loose** To give freedom to.
- loud** /loud/ *adj.* Not quiet; noisy: *Loud* music bothers her ears.
- loy·al** /loi'əl/ *adj.* True; faithful.

act, āte, câre, ärt;      egg, ēven;      if, īce;      on, ōver, ôr;      bōok, fōod;      up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, ī in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus;      yōo=u in music;      oil;      out;  
                                  chair; sing; shop; thank; thāt;      zh in treasure.



## loyalty

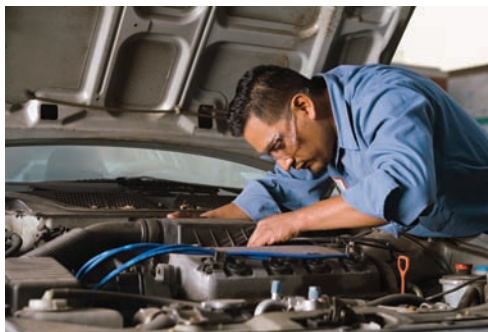
- loy-al-ty** /loi'əl·tē/ *n.*, *pl.* **loy-al-ties** The condition of being loyal.
- luck-y** /luk'ē/ *adj.* **luck-i-er**, **luck-i-est** Having or bringing good luck.
- lug-gage** /lug'ij/ *n.* Suitcases and other baggage used in traveling.
- lu-nar** /loo'nər/ *adj.* Of or having to do with the moon: *lunar* rocks.

## M

- mag-ic** /maj'ik/ *n.* The art of pretending to do the impossible.
- mag-ni-fy** /mag'nə-fi/ *v.* **mag-ni-fied**, **mag-ni-fy-ing** 1 To make something look bigger than its real size. 2 To make something more important than it really is; to exaggerate: She often *magnifies* her problems.
- mail** /māl/ 1 *n.* Letters and packages handled by the post office. 2 *v.* To send a letter or package.
- main-tain** /mān-tān'/ *v.* 1 To continue or keep up; to keep: to *maintain* good work habits. 2 To support; to take care of: a fund to *maintain* the library. 3 To keep in good condition: to *maintain* city buses.
- ma-jor** /mä'jər/ *adj.* Important; greater or larger: a *major* part.
- ma-jor-i-ty** /mə-jôr'ə-tē/ *n.*, *pl.* **ma-jor-i-ties** More than half the number.
- mam-mal** /mam'əl/ *n.* A warm-blooded animal having a backbone: A female *mammal* produces milk to feed her young.
- mam-moth** /mam'əth/ *adj.* Huge; enormous.
- man-age** /man'ij/ *v.* **man-aged**, **man-ag-ing** 1 To be in charge of. 2 To succeed in doing something. 3 To get by: We *manage* on very little money.
- man-ag-er** /man'ij-ər/ *n.* A person who manages a business or department: The *manager* will solve your problem.

## medal

- man-u-fac-ture** /man'yə-fak'chər/ *v.* **man-u-fac-tured**, **man-u-fac-tur-ing**, *n.* 1 *v.* To make or produce things by hand or machine: His company *manufactures* stuffed animals. 2 *n.* The act or process of manufacturing.
- ma-roon**<sup>1</sup> /mə-roōn'/ *v.* 1 To put ashore and leave on a barren island or coast. 2 To desert or leave helpless.
- ma-roon**<sup>2</sup> /mə-roōn'/ *n.*, *adj.* Dull, dark red.
- mar-ry** /mar'ē/ *v.* **mar-ried**, **mar-ry-ing** 1 To become husband and wife. 2 To join as husband and wife: The priest *married* five couples yesterday.
- mar-vel-ous** /mär'vəl-əs/ *adj.* 1 Causing wonder; amazing: a *marvelous* acrobat. 2 *informal* Very good; excellent.
- may-or** /mä'ər/ *n.* The chief elected official of a city.
- mean-ing-ful** /mē'ning-fəl/ *adj.* Full of meaning; important: Thanksgiving is a *meaningful* day for most Americans.
- mea-sles** /mē'zəlz/ *n.*, *pl.* A disease that causes red spots on the skin.
- meas-ure-ment** /mez'hər-mənt/ *n.* 1 The act of measuring. 2 The size, quantity, or amount found by measuring. 3 A system of measures.
- me-chan-ic** /mə-kan'ik/ *n.* A person whose work involves repairing machinery.



- med-al** /med'əl/ *n.* A small piece of metal, sometimes attached to a ribbon, with a picture or writing on it.



## meddle

- med·dle** /med'əl/ *v.* **med·dled, med·dling** To interfere with something that is not your business.
- me·di·um** /mē'dē-əm/ *adj.* Between two conditions in amount, position, size, etc.; middle: I am of *medium* height.
- mel·o·dy** /mel'ə-dē/ *n., pl. mel·o·dies* A tune or song.
- men·tion** /men'shən/ *v.* To tell about; to refer to: Don't *mention* it to her.
- mes·sage** /mes'ij/ *n.* Information that is told or sent to another person.
- mid·dle** /mid'əl/ *n.* The center or halfway point.
- milk** /milk/ 1 *n.* A white liquid from cows. 2 *n.* Similar liquid produced by other female animals to feed their young. 3 *v.* To get milk from.



- mis·chief** /mis'chif/ *n.* 1 Behavior that can cause trouble or harm. 2 Pranks.
- mis·lead** /mis-lēd'/ *v.* **mis·led, mis·lead·ing** 1 To lead in the wrong direction. 2 To cause someone to believe something that is not true.
- mis·sile** /mis'əl/ *n.* Something, especially a weapon, that is thrown or shot, as a bullet, stone, rocket, etc.
- mis·spell** /mis-spel'/ *v.* To spell a word incorrectly.
- mod·el** /mod'əl/ 1 *n.* A small-sized copy of something: a *model* of an airplane. 2 *v.* To form material into a model: to *model* clay. 3 *n.* A good person to copy; someone worth imitating. 4 *adj. use:* a *model* teacher. 5 *n.* A person who

## murmur

- poses for an artist or photographer.
- 6 *v.* To act as a model.
- mon·arch** /mon'ər-k/ *n.* 1 A ruler, as a king or queen. 2 A large orange and black North American butterfly.



- mort·gage** /môr'gij/ *n., v.* **mort·gaged, mort·gag·ing** 1 *n.* The contract that gives a bank the right to assume ownership of property if an owner fails to repay the loan used to buy that property. 2 *v.* To arrange a loan, using property as insurance: We *mortgaged* our home to buy a store.
- mo·tion** /mō'shən/ 1 *n.* Movement. 2 *n.* A signal; gesture. 3 *v.* To signal; to make a movement that shows meaning.
- mo·tor** /mō'tər/ 1 *n.* The engine that makes cars and other machines go. 2 *adj.* Run by a motor: a *motor* scooter.
- mov·a·ble** /mōō'və-bəl/ *adj.* Able to be moved: *movable* engine parts.
- move** /mōōv/ *v.* **moved, mov·ing** 1 To go or make go from one place to another. 2 To change where you live. 3 To change position: to *move* your desk.
- move·ment** /mōōv'mənt/ *n.* The act of moving: the *movement* of waves.
- mov·er** /mōō'vər/ *n.* A company or person that moves things, especially furniture, from one place to another.
- mov·ie** /mōō'vē/ *n.* A film.
- mur·mur** /mûr'mər/ 1 *n.* A low, unclear sound. 2 *v.* To make such a sound: He *murmured* in his sleep.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, târn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.

## muscle

**mus·cle** /mus'əl/ *n.* One of the bundles of stringy tissue in the body that produce the body's movements by tightening and stretching.

**mus·cu·lar** /mus'kyə·lər/ *adj.* Having well-developed muscles.

**my·self** /mī·self/ *pron.* My own self: I enjoy spending time by *myself*.

## N

**na·tion** /nā'shən/ *n.* Country.

**nat·u·ral·ly** /nach'ər·əl·ē/ *adv.* 1 In a natural way: Talk *naturally*. 2 Having to do with nature: *naturally* wavy hair. 3 Certainly; of course.

**na·ture** /nā'chər/ *n.* The world except for those things made by people: She likes to photograph *nature*.



**near·by** /adj. nīr'bī', *adv.* nīr'bī'/ *adj.*, *adv.* Close by; near: a *nearby* hospital. to play *nearby*.

**neck** /nek/ *n.* 1 The part of your body between your head and your shoulders. 2 The narrow part of a bottle.

**neigh·bor·hood** /nā'bər·hōod/ *n.* A small section of a city or town.

**nei·ther** /nē'thər or nī'thər/ 1 *adj.*, *pron.* Not one or the other: *Neither* player hit a home run. *Neither* scored a run. 2 *conj.* Not either: I didn't want dessert; *neither* did my brother.

## occupy

**nerve** /nûrv/ *n.* One of the many thread-like parts in the body that carry messages between the brain or spinal cord and all other parts of the body.

**ner·vous** /nûr'vəs/ *adj.* 1 Tense; uneasy. 2 Fearful.

**nev·er·the·less** /nev'ər·thə·les'/ *adv.*, *conj.* In any event; however: The movie had started, but we bought tickets *nevertheless*. I hurt my arm; *nevertheless* I continued playing.

**news·pa·per** /n(y)ōōz'pā'pər/ *n.* A publication, usually put out daily or weekly, containing news, editorials, advertisements, and other items.

**nine·ty or 90** /nīn'tē/ *n.*, *adj.* A number equal to ten nines.

**non·fic·tion** /non'fik'shən/ *n.* Any story about real people and events.



**note·book** /nōt'boōk'/ *n.* A book with blank pages in which you can write.

**no·tice** /nō'tis/ *v.* **no·ticed**, **no·tic·ing** To see; to pay attention to.

**noun** /noun/ *n.* A word that names a person, place, or thing.

**num·ber** /num'bər/ 1 *n.* A unit in math. 2 *n.* An amount. 3 *v.* To give numbers to: to *number* the pages.

**nu·mer·ous** /n(y)ōō'mə·rəs/ *adj.* A great number; very many: He received *numerous* cards for his birthday.

## O

**oc·cu·pa·tion** /ok'yə·pā'shən/ *n.* Anything a person does, but especially what someone does for a living: My *occupation* is managing a store.

**oc·cu·py** /ok'yə·pī/ *v.* **oc·cu·pied**, **oc·cu·py·ing** 1 To take up or fill space or time. 2 To live in. 3 To keep busy.



## occur

- oc·cur** /ə·kûr'/ *v.* **oc·curred, oc·curing**  
 1 To take place; to happen. 2 To come to mind.
- of·fice** /ôf'is/ *n.* 1 A place where business or work is done. 2 The people who work in an office. 3 An elected or appointed position.
- of·fi·cial** /ə·fish'əl/ 1 *n.* A person who holds an office or job and has certain duties or powers. 2 *adj.* Of or having to do with an office of authority.
- oil** /oil/ 1 *n.* A greasy liquid that will not mix with water. 2 *v.* To put oil on: to oil a baking pan.
- op·er·a·tor** /op'ə·rā'tər/ *n.* A person who runs or operates a machine.
- op·pose** /ə·pōz'/ *v.* **op·posed, op·pos·ing**  
 1 To work or fight against: to *oppose* a plan. 2 To be in contrast to: A leader must be strong as *opposed* to weak.
- op·po·site** /op'ə·zit/ 1 *adj.* Located on the other side: *opposite* sides of the gym. 2 *adj.* Entirely different: in *opposite* directions. 3 *n.* Something completely different: *Sweet* is the *opposite* of *sour*. 4 *prep.* Across from.
- our·selves** /our·selvz'/ *pron.* Us and no one else: We paid for it *ourselves*.
- out·line** /out'lin'/ *n., v.* **out·lined, out·lin·ing** 1 *n.* An organization of ideas that serves as a guide in writing a paragraph or report. 2 *v.* To make an outline.
- o·ver·look** /ō·vər·loo'k'/ *v.* 1 To have a view from above. 2 To fail to see.
- own·er** /ō'nər/ *n.* The person who owns something.
- oys·ter** /ois'tər/ *n.* A shellfish used as food; some produce pearls.

## P

**pad·dle** /pad'əl/ *n., v.* **pad·dled, pad·**

## particular

- dling** 1 *n.* A short oar. 2 *v.* To use a paddle to move a boat. 3 *v.* To move your hands and feet in water.
- paid** /pād/ *v.* Past tense and past participle of *pay*.
- pain·less** /pān'lis/ *adj.* Without pain.
- pa·ja·mas** /pə·jä'məz/ *n., pl.* Clothes for sleeping.
- pa·per** /pā'pər/ 1 *n.* Material used for writing, printing, and wrapping things. 2 *n.* Paper with writing on it. 3 *n.* A newspaper. 4 *adj.* Made of paper.
- par·a·graph** /par'ə·graf'/ *n.* A group of sentences that develop an idea: Indent the first line of the *paragraph*.
- par·cel** /pär'səl/ *n.* Something wrapped; a package.
- par·don** /pär'dən/ 1 *v.* To forgive. 2 *n.* Forgiveness. 3 *n.* The legal order that frees someone from punishment.
- par·ent** /pär'ənt/ *n.* A person's mother or father.
- park** /pärk/ 1 *n.* Land with trees, grass, and playgrounds. 2 *v.* To put a car, bicycle, etc., somewhere and leave it.



- par·tial** /pär'shəl/ *adj.* Not all; in part.
- par·tic·u·lar** /pär'tik'yə·lər/ *adj.* 1 Relating to a certain person, place, or thing: a *particular* park. 2 Unusual; special: This game is of *particular* importance. 3 Precise; hard to please: Yoko is very *particular* about the food she eats.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thät; zh in treasure.



## pass

**pass** /pas/ 1 *v.* To go by. 2 *n.* A permit allowing someone to do something: She was given a free *pass* to the movie theater. 3 *v.* To succeed: to *pass* a test. 4 *v.* To move from one person or place to another.

**pas-ture** /pas'chər/ *n.* A grassy field where cattle, sheep, or horses graze.

**pa-tient** /pā'shənt/ *adj.* 1 Able to wait or experience difficulties without complaining. 2 *adj.* Calm and understanding. 3 *n.* A person who is being treated for a sickness or an injury.

**pay** /pā/ *v.* **paid, pay-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To give money for something. 2 *n.* Money you get for working.

**pay-ment** /pā'mənt/ *n.* Money paid for something bought or done.

**peace** /pēs/ *n.* 1 A condition without war. 2 Calmness: *peace* and quiet.

**peace-ful** /pēs'fəl/ *adj.* Calm; quiet; full of peace: a *peaceful* vacation.

**peach** /pēch/ *n.* A round fruit with a fuzzy, yellowish-pink skin.

**ped-al** /ped'əl/ 1 *n.* A device pushed by the foot to control or operate something, as a bicycle. 2 *v.* To move or operate something by pushing down on this part. ▶ *Pedal* comes from the Latin root *pes*, "foot."

**ped-dle** /ped'əl/ *v.* **ped-dled, ped-dling** To travel around selling things: to *ped-dle* ice cream.

**pen-ni-less** /pen'i-lis/ *adj.* Very poor; without money: a *penniless* man.

**peo-ple** /pē'pəl/ *n.* Human beings.

**per-form-ance** /pər-fôr'məns/ *n.* 1 The act of performing or doing: The ranger rescued the family in the *performance* of his job. 2 A play, concert, or other kind of entertainment.

**per-il** /per'əl/ *n.* Danger; risk: The houses near the fire were in *peril*.

**per-ma-nent** /pûr'mən-ənt/ *adj.* Meant to last for a long time; not temporary.

**per-mis-sion** /pər-mish'ən/ *n.* Approval to do something.

## plural

**pet-al** /pet'əl/ *n.* One of the leaflike parts of a flower.

**phrase** /frāz/ *n., v.* **phrased, phras-ing** 1 *n.* In grammar, a sequence of two or more words, used as a single part of speech, that does not contain a subject and predicate: "In the sky" is a *phrase*. 2 *v.* To express in a particular way: The debater *phrased* the argument carefully.

**pick-le** /pik'əl/ *n.* A cucumber or other food soaked in salt water or vinegar.

**pil-lar** /pil'ər/ *n.* A column that supports a building.



**pi-lot** /pī'lət/ *n.* The person who steers or guides an airplane.

**pi-o-neer** /pī'ə-nir'/ *n.* A person who is the first to settle a new region.

**pi-rate** /pī'rit/ *n.* A person who attacks and robs ships at sea.

**pit-y** /pit'ē/ *n., v.* **pit-ied, pit-y-ing** 1 *n.* A feeling of sorrow or sympathy. 2 *v.* To feel sorry for.

**plaid** /plad/ 1 *n.* A cloth woven with bands of many colors, crossing each other in patterns. 2 *adj.* Having a pattern like that of plaid.

**plot** /plot/ *n., v.* **plot-ted, plot-ting** 1 *n.* A small piece of land. 2 *n.* A secret plan. 3 *v.* To plan in secret. 4 *n.* The events in a story.

**plu-ral** /plūr'əl/ 1 *adj.* Referring to more than one: a *plural* noun. 2 *n.* The form of a word to show more than one.

## point

- point** /point/ *v.* 1 To show or indicate: The compass needle *points* north. 2 To aim or direct.
- poi-son** /poi'zən/ 1 *n.* A substance that can cause illness or death. 2 *v.* To give such a substance to.
- po-lar** /pō'lār/ *adj.* Having to do with the North or South Pole: *polar* bear.
- pol-ish** /pol'ish/ 1 *n.* Smoothness and shininess. 2 *n.* Wax or other substance rubbed on something to make it shiny. 3 *v.* To make shiny.
- po-lit-i-cal** /pə-lit'i-kəl/ *adj.* Having to do with government or politicians: *politi-cal* parties.
- pon-der** /pon'dər/ *v.* To think deeply about something.
- porch** /pōrch/ *n.* A covered entrance to a house or building.
- pos-ses-sion** /pə-zesh'ən/ *n.* 1 The fact of owning or having something: I have your missing keys in my *possession*. 2 Something owned: Our *possessions* were destroyed in the hurricane.
- post-age** /pōs'tij/ *n.* A charge for sending mail.
- pow-der** /pou'dər/ 1 *n.* Any solid substance pounded or ground into fine dustlike particles: baby *powder*. 2 *v.* To put powder on.
- pow-er-ful** /pou'ər-fəl/ *adj.* Strong; full of power: a *powerful* nation.
- pred-i-cate** /pred'i-kit/ *n.* A word or group of words that tell something about the subject.
- pre-fer** /pri-fūr'/ *v.* **pre-ferred, pre-fer-ring** To like better than.
- pre-pare** /pri-pâr'/ *v.* **pre-pared, pre-par-ing** To get ready; to make ready: We're *preparing* lunch.
- pre-serve** /pri-zûrv'/ *v.* **pre-served, pre-serv-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To protect or keep from danger: I waxed the wood table to

## production

- preserve* the surface. 2 *v.* To prepare food so it can be kept without spoiling: They salted the fish to *preserve* it. 3 *v.* To keep from spoiling: My new refrigerator *preserves* food better than my old one. 4 *n.* An area set aside for the protection of plants and animals.
- pres-i-dent** /prez'ə-dent/ *n.* 1 A person selected to direct an organization, club, college, business, etc. 2 The chief official of a republic.
- pres-sure** /presh'ər/ *n.* The force made by one thing pressing against another.
- prey** /prā/ 1 *n.* An animal hunted for food. 2 *v.* To hunt animals for food.
- price** /pris/ *n.* Cost.
- prin-ci-pal** /prin'sə-pəl/ 1 *adj.* Most important: the *principal* part in the play. 2 *n.* The head of a school.
- prin-ci-ple** /prin'sə-pəl/ *n.* 1 A truth, law, or rule: the *principle* of religious freedom. 2 Good standards of behavior: Our teacher is a woman of *principle*.
- pri-vate** /prī-vit/ *adj.* 1 Not meant to be shared with other people. 2 Not for public use.
- prize** /prīz/ *n.* Something won in a contest or game.
- pro-ceed** /prə-sēd'/ *v.* To go forward or go on, especially after a stop.
- pro-duce** /v. prə-d(y)ōōs', n. prod'(y)ōōs or prō'd(y)ōōs/ *v.* **pro-duced, pro-duc-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To bring into being: Orchards *produce* fruit. 2 *n.* Farm products, as vegetables and fruits, grown for market. 3 *v.* To bring about; cause.
- prod-uct** /prod'əkt/ *n.* 1 A thing made or produced to be sold. 2 In math, the result gotten by multiplication.
- pro-duc-tion** /prə-duk'shən/ *n.* 1 The act or process of making or producing something. 2 The amount of goods or services produced.

ac, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôök, fôod; up, târn;  
æ=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôô=u in music; oil; out;  
chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## profit

- prof-it** /prof'it/ 1 *n.* In business, the amount of money gained after subtracting all costs. 2 *v.* To gain; to benefit: He *profited* from his mistakes.
- prom-ise** /prom'is/ *n., v.* **prom-ised, prom-is-ing** 1 *n.* A statement that someone will or will not do something. 2 *v.* To give a promise.
- prompt** /prompt/ *adj.* Right on time.
- pro-noun** /prō'noun/ *n.* A word that is used in place of a noun.
- proof** /prōōf/ *n.* Facts that prove something is true or false.
- proof-read** /prōōf'rēd'/ *v.* **proof-read, proof-read-ing** To read and correct errors in something written.
- prop-er** /prop'ər/ *adj.* Correct for a certain occasion or situation.
- prove** /prōōv/ *v.* **proved, proved or prov-en, prov-ing** To show with facts that something is true or false.
- pry** /pri/ *v.* **pried, pry-ing** To force open with a wedge or lever.
- pub-lish** /pub'lish/ *v.* 1 To print and issue (as a book, magazine, or newspaper) for sale to the public. 2 To have one's work published: Our best-selling author *publishes* regularly. 3 To make known publicly.
- pun-ish-ment** /pun'ish-mənt/ *n.* 1 The act of giving a penalty for a wrong someone has done. 2 The penalty itself.
- pu-pil**<sup>1</sup> /pyōō'pəl/ *n.* The dark central part of the eye, which admits light to the back of the eyeball.
- pu-pil**<sup>2</sup> /pyōō'pəl/ *n.* A student.
- pup-py** /pup'ē/ *n., pl.* **pup-pies** A young dog.
- pur-chase** /pûr'chəs/ *v.* **pur-chased, pur-chas-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To buy. 2 *n.* Something bought.
- pur-ple** /pûr'pəl/ *n., adj.* A color that is a mixture of blue and red.
- pur-pose-ly** /pûr'pəs-lē/ *adv.* Happening or doing on purpose: Did you let out the dog *purposefully*?

## read

### Q

- quan-ti-ty** /kwon'tə-tē/ *n., pl.* **quan-ti-ties** An amount.
- quar-ter** /kwôr'tər/ 1 *n.* One-fourth of a whole. 2 *v.* To divide into four parts. 3 *n.* A coin worth 25 cents.
- quench** /kwench/ *v.* To satisfy a thirst by drinking.
- ques-tion** /kwes'chən/ 1 *n.* Something you ask in order to find out. 2 *n.* A kind of sentence that ends with a question mark. 3 *v.* To ask questions.
- quick** /kwik/ *adj.* Done in a short time; fast: a *quick* trip to the store.
- qui-et** /kwī'ət/ 1 *adj.* Having or making little noise. 2 *adj.* Not busy; relaxed. 3 *v.* To make or become quiet.
- quit** /kwit/ *v.* **quit or quit-ted, quit-ting** 1 To give up or stop doing something. 2 To give up a job: She *quit* her job because she was offered a better one.
- quite** /kwīt/ *adv.* 1 Completely: I am *quite* well. 2 Really: Simon's house is *quite* close to ours.
- quo-ta-tion** /kwō-tā'shən/ *n.* The exact words said by a person. You use quotation marks ("...") before and after a speaker's words.

### R

- range** /rānj/ *n., v.* **ranged, rang-ing** 1 *n.* The possibilities within certain limits: a wide *range* of colors. 2 *v.* To be found within known limits: to *range* in price. 3 *n.* A wide, grassy plain for roaming and grazing. 4 *n.* A stove.
- rare** /râr/ *adj.* **rar-er, rar-est** Not often seen or found; unusual.—**rare-ly.**
- reach** /rêch/ *v.* 1 To touch or get hold of. 2 To arrive at.
- read** /rêd/ *v.* **read /red/, read-ing** 1 To get meaning from letters and words. 2 To say aloud something that is written: *Read* the list of ingredients to me and I'll place them on the table.



## readiness

**read-i-ness** /red'ē-nis/ *n.* The condition of being ready or willing: Nina's swimming skill showed a *readiness* for the lifesaving course.

**rea-son** /rē'zən/ *n.* 1 Explanation; excuse. 2 Cause: Being thirsty is a good *reason* for drinking water.

**re-build** /rē-bild'/ *v.* **re-built, re-build-ing** To build again.

**re-cent** /rē'sənt/ *adj.* Not long past; having happened a little while ago.

**re-cite** /ri-sīt'/ *v.* **re-cit-ed, re-cit-ing** To repeat something memorized.

**reck-less** /rek'lis/ *adj.* Careless: *reckless* driving.

**re-con-sid-er** /rē'kən-sid'ər/ *v.* To consider again, possibly thinking of changing your mind.

**re-fer** /ri-fūr'/ *v.* **re-ferred, re-fer-ring** To turn to for information, help, or treatment: My doctor *referred* me to an eye specialist.

**re-fill** /rē-fil'/ *v.* To fill again.

**re-fresh-ment** /ri-fresh'mənt/ *n.* 1 The state of being refreshed. 2 (*pl.*) Food and drink.

**re-fu-el** /rē-fyōō'əl or rē-fyōōl'/ *v.* To fill again with fuel.

**re-gard** /ri-gärd'/ 1 *v.* To show thoughtfulness toward; to respect: I *regard* your feelings highly. 2 *n. (pl.)* Best wishes.

**re-heat** /rē-hēt'/ *v.* To heat again.

**re-joice** /ri-jois'/ *v.* **re-joiced, re-joic-ing** To be filled with joy: I *rejoiced* at her good fortune.

**re-lay** /*n.* rē'lā, *v.* ri-lā' or rē'lā/ 1 *n.* A race in which each member of a team goes only a certain distance. 2 *v.* To pass along information: to *relay* a message.

**re-ly** /ri-lī'/ *v.* **re-lied, re-ly-ing** To put trust in; to depend: We can *rely* on George to keep our secret.

## requirement

**re-mem-ber** /ri-mem'bər/ *v.* 1 To bring to mind again. 2 To keep in mind.

**re-move** /ri-mōōv'/ *v.* **re-moved, re-mov-ing** To take off or take away: She *removed* the paint from the table.

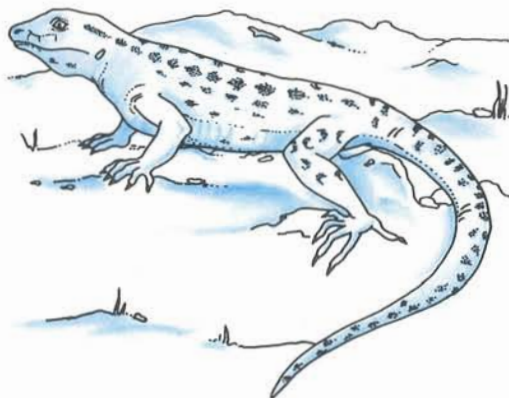
**re-new** /ri-n(y)ōō'/ *v.* 1 To make like new: Rest *renewed* his health. 2 To get for another period of time; extend: to *renew* library books.

**re-paint** /rē-pānt'/ *v.* To paint again: to *repaint* with another color.

**re-pair** /ri-pār'/ 1 *v.* To fix or mend. 2 *n. (pl.)* The act of repairing.

**re-ply** /ri-plī'/ *v.* **re-plied, re-ply-ing, n.** 1 *v.* To give an answer. 2 *n.* An answer.

**rep-tile** /rep'til or rep'tīl/ *n.* A cold-blooded animal that moves by hopping, crawling, or creeping, as a snake.



**re-pub-lic** /ri-pub'lik/ *n.* A type of government in which the power to make and carry out the laws is granted to elected officials: The United States is a *republic*.

**re-quire-ment** /ri-kwīr'mənt/ *n.* Something required or needed: What are the *requirements* for voting?

act, âte, câre, ärt;

ə=a in *ago*, e in *listen*,

egg, êven;

i in *giraffe*, o in *pilot*, u in *circus*;

chair; sing; shop; thank; that; zh in *treasure*.

if, îce;

on, ôver, ôr;

bôok, fôod;

yôo=u in *music*;

up, târn;

oil; out;

## rerun

**re-run** /rē'run' or rē'run'/ *v.* **re-ran**, **re-run**, **re-run-ning**, *n.* 1 *v.* To play or show a tape, TV program, or movie again. 2 *n.* A TV program or movie that is shown again: In the summer, most TV shows are *reruns*.

**re-spect-ful** /ri-spekt'fəl/ *adj.* Courteous; full of respect: My sister is *respectful* of my things.

**re-pond** /ri-spond'/ *v.* 1 To answer; to reply. 2 To react: Dad *responded* to the medicine.

**rest**<sup>1</sup> /rest'/ 1 *v.* To sleep; to relax. 2 *n.* A break taken to get over being tired. 3 *n.* Something used for support.

**rest**<sup>2</sup> /rest'/ *n.* The amount left over.

**re-tell** /rē-tel'/ *v.* **re-told**, **re-tell-ing** To tell again.

**re-told** /rē-tōld'/ *v.* Past tense and past participle of *retell*.

**re-treat** /ri-trēt'/ 1 *v.* To stop fighting, as in a battle; to go back; to withdraw. 2 *n.* The act of retreating: The soldiers' *retreat* signaled defeat.

**re-u-nite** /rē'yōō-nīt'/ *v.* **re-u-nit-ed**, **re-u-nit-ing** To get or cause to get together again: My friend and I were *re-united* after five years.

**re-veal** /ri-vēl'/ *v.* 1 To make known: to *reveal* a secret. 2 To make visible; to show: The curtain opened to *reveal* actors on a stage.

**re-ward** /ri-wōrd'/ 1 *n.* Money, praise, etc., given or received for working hard or doing something special. 2 *v.* To give a reward to or for.

**re-wind** /rē-wīnd'/ *v.* **re-wound**, **re-wind-ing** To wind again: I *rewound* the tape.

**re-write** /rē-rīt'/ *v.* **re-wrote**, **re-writ-ten**, **re-writ-ing** To write something over again.

**rhythm** /rith'əm/ *n.* 1 The repetition of a beat, sound, or accent in a regular pattern: the *rhythm* of drumbeats. 2 The pattern or arrangement of mu-

## rustle

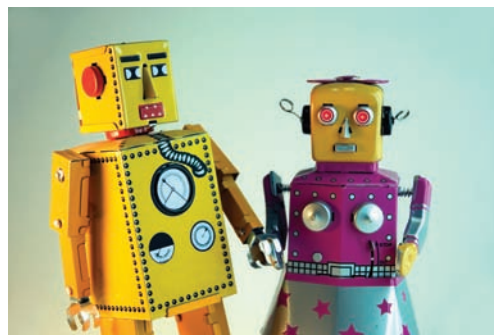
sical sounds or of the syllables in poetry: I tapped my foot in *rhythm* to the music.

**rid-dle** /rid'əl/ *n.* A tricky question or problem, usually having a funny answer.

**rig-id** /rij'id/ *adj.* Stiff; unbending: a *rigid* metal pole.

**roast** /rōst'/ 1 *v.* To cook in an oven or over an open fire: We *roasted* two chickens for the picnic. 2 *adj.* Having been roasted: *roast* chicken.

**ro-bot** /rō'bot or rō'bət/ *n.* A machine that may look like a human being, built to do work in place of human beings.



**rock-et** /rok'it/ *n.* A machine that gets its power by burning fuel and oxygen, used to propel a missile or spacecraft.

**room-mate** /rōōm'māt'/ *n.* A person who shares an apartment or house with another.

**run-ner** /run'ər/ *n.* A person who runs for exercise or in a race.

**ru-ral** /rūr'əl/ *adj.* Having to do with the country rather than the city: *Rural* life is quieter than city life.

**rus-tle** /rus'əl/ *v.* **rus-tled**, **rus-tling**, *n.* 1 *v.* To make or cause to make the sound of things brushing against each other: The wind *rustled* the leaves. 2 *n.* The sound of things rubbing together: the *rustle* of paper.



## saddle

### S

- sad·dle** /səd'əl/ *n.*, *v.* **sad·dled, sad·dling** **1** *n.* A padded seat, usually of leather, on a horse or bicycle. **2** *v.* To put a saddle on.
- sad·ness** /səd'nis/ *n.* The condition of being sad.
- sal·ad** /sal'əd/ *n.* Raw vegetables, such as lettuce, celery, or tomatoes, and sometimes chopped meat, fish, or eggs, served with a dressing.
- sal·vage** /sal'vij/ *v.* **sal·vaged, sal·vag·ing** To save from destruction: They were able to *salvage* the ship's log.
- sam·ple** /sam'pəl/ *n.*, *v.* **sam·pled, sam·pling** **1** *n.* A part or an example of a larger thing: a *sample* of material. **2** *v.* To try, to take a taste.
- san·dal** /san'dəl/ *n.* A type of shoe consisting of a sole with straps to hold your foot in place.
- sat·is·fy** /sat'is-fi/ *v.* **sat·is·fied, sat·is·fy·ing** **1** To fill a need or desire completely: The meal *satisfied* my hunger. **2** To free from doubt; to convince: The suspect's story did not *satisfy* the police.
- sau·cer** /sô'sər/ *n.* **1** A round, almost flat dish, used to hold a cup. **2** Anything shaped like a saucer: a flying *saucer*.
- scared** /skârd/ *adj.* Afraid.
- scarf** /skärf/ *n.*, *pl.* **scarves** /skärvz/ A square or long rectangular piece of silk, wool, cotton, etc., worn on the head or around the neck or shoulders.
- sched·ule** /skej'ool/ *n.*, *v.* **sched·uled, sched·ul·ing** **1** *n.* A plan of the times when certain things are to be done or take place: a train *schedule*. **2** *v.* To establish a time order: I *scheduled* the class for 10 A.M.
- scis·sors** /siz'ərz/ *n. pl.* A cutting tool with two sharp blades that close together to cut.

## service

- scoop** /skoop/ **1** *n.* A small measuring tool like a shovel. **2** *n.* The amount held by a scoop. **3** *v.* To take out or up with a scoop.
- scowl** /skoul/ **1** *v.* To frown; to look angry. **2** *n.* A frown; an angry look.
- scrap** /skrap/ *n.* A small piece of something: a *scrap* of food.
- screen** /skrēn/ *n.* **1** A door or window covering made of wire. **2** A surface on which movies or slides are shown.
- scrub** /skrub/ *v.* **scrubbed, scrub·bing** To clean by rubbing very hard.
- sea·son** /sē'zən/ *n.* **1** Spring, summer, autumn, or winter. **2** Some particular time of year: the football *season*.
- se·lec·tion** /si-lek'shən/ *n.* **1** The act of choosing; choice. **2** Something or someone chosen.
- sense** /sens/ *n.*, *v.* **sensed, sens·ing** **1** *n.* Taste, smell, sight, hearing, or touch. **2** *n.* An awareness or understanding: a fine *sense* of humor. **3** *v.* To become aware of something: We *sensed* danger.
- sen·si·ble** /sen'sə-bəl/ *adj.* Having or showing good sense or judgment.
- sen·tence** /sen'təns/ *n.* A group of words that makes sense by itself.
- ser·geant** /sär'jənt/ *n.* A rank in the military or a police force.
- se·ri·ous** /sir'ē-əs/ *adj.* **1** Thoughtful; grave: a *serious* expression. **2** Very important: a *serious* matter.
- serve** /sûrv/ *v.* **served, serv·ing** **1** To perform a duty or function; to work: Our president may *serve* for two four-year terms. **2** To bring food; to wait on. **3** To put the ball in play, as in tennis.
- ser·vice** /sûr'vis/ *n.*, *v.* **ser·viced, ser·vic·ing** **1** *n.* The act of serving: I received quick *service* in the shop. **2** *v.* To repair: to *service* a car.

act, âte, câre, ärt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## settlement

**set-tle-ment** /set'əl-mənt/ *n.* 1 A place settled by a group of people; colony. 2 An agreement: a *settlement* of a labor dispute.

**set-tler** /set'lər/ *n.* A person who settles or makes a home in a new country or in a colony.

**shack** /shak/ *n.* A small building, usually one in bad condition; a hut.

**sham-poo** /sham-pōō'/ *1 n.* A soap used to wash hair. *2 v.* To wash hair.

**shelf** /shelf/ *n., pl. shelves* /shelvz/ A thin piece of wood, glass, etc., attached to a wall or built into a piece of furniture, used to hold things.

**shel-ter** /shel'tər/ *1 n.* Something that covers and protects from harm or bad weather, as a tent or house. *2 n.* The condition of being sheltered: We found *shelter* before the storm broke. *3 v.* To protect; to give shelter to.

**shep-herd** /shep'ərd/ *n.* A person who herds or takes care of sheep.

**sher-bet** /shûr'bit/ *n.* A frozen, usually fruit-flavored dessert, made with water and milk.

**sher-iff** /sher'if/ *n.* The chief law enforcement officer in a county.

**shift** /shift/ *1 v.* To move from one position to another: He *shifted* his backpack from one shoulder to the other. *2 n.* A change in position or direction: a *shift* in the wind.

**shin-y** /shī'nē/ *adj. shin-i-er, shin-i-est* Bright; reflecting light.

**shock** /shok/ *1 n.* An unexpected, violent shake or blow: the *shock* of an earthquake. *2 n.* A sudden, violent, or upsetting event: My parrot's death was a great *shock*. *3 v.* Cause to feel surprise, terror, or disgust: The bus accident *shocked* the community. *4 n.* What the body feels when an electric current passes through it.

**shook** /shook/ *v.* Past tense of *shake*.

**short** /shôrt/ *1 adj.* Not long. *2 adj.*

## silent

Not tall. *3 adj.* Lacking a sufficient amount: You are a dime *short*. *4 adv.* Suddenly: Rick stopped *short*. *5 n. (pl.)* Pants that stop above the knees.

**shout** /shout/ *1 n.* A sudden loud yell. *2 v.* To make a sudden loud yell. *3 v.* To talk loudly.

**show-er** /shou'ər/ *1 n.* A short rainfall. *2 v.* To rain. *3 n.* A bath taken standing up with water coming from an overhead nozzle.

**shrill** /shrill/ *adj.* Having a high, sharp sound: Some birds make *shrill* sounds.

**shrink** /shrink/ *v. shrank or shrunk, shrunk or shrunk-en, shrink-ing* To get or cause to get smaller.

**shrub** /shrub/ *n.* A low, treelike plant with many branches; a bush.



**shrunk** /shrungk/ *v.* A past tense and past participle of *shrink*.

**shy** /shī/ *adj.* Quiet; not at ease with strangers.

**sick-ness** /sik'nis/ *n.* 1 The condition of being sick or ill. 2 A certain disease or illness.

**side-walk** /sīd'wôk'/ *n.* A paved footpath along the side of a street.

**sign** /sīn/ *1 n.* A symbol, object, expression, or motion that has a meaning or stands for something: The *sign* for multiplication is  $\times$ . *2 n.* A board with writing that gives information or a warning. *3 v.* To write your name in your own handwriting.

**sig-na-ture** /sig'nə-chor/ *n.* A person's name written by that person.

**si-lent** /sī'lənt/ *adj.* 1 Making no noise; soundless. 2 Remaining quiet; not speaking.

## silver

- sil-ver** /sil'vər/ **1 n.** A grayish-white metal. **2 adj.** Made of or containing silver: *silver jewelry*. **3 adj.** Having the color of silver.
- sin-cere-ly** /sin-sir'lē/ *adv.* **1** Honestly; really. **2** Truly, often used with *yours*: The letter closed with "*Sincerely yours*, Liza."
- sin-gle** /sing'gəl/ *adj., v.* **sin-gled, sin-gling** **1 adj.** One by itself; used by one: a *single* bed. **2 v.** To choose one out of a group: Celia was *singled* out for an honor. **3 adj.** Not married.
- sin-gu-lar** /sing'gyə-lər/ **1 adj.** Referring to only one: a *singular* noun. **2 n.** The form of a word to show only one: *Tax* is the *singular* of *taxes*.
- sketch** /skech/ **1 n.** A quick, rough, or unfinished drawing. **2 v.** To make a rough drawing: I decided to *sketch* the landscape quickly and paint it later when I arrived home.
- ski** /skē/ *n., v.* **skied, skiing, adj.** **1 n.** One of a pair of long runners fastened to the soles of boots for gliding over snow. **2 v.** To move on skis. **3 adj.** Having to do with skiing: *ski boots*.
- skin** /skin/ *n., v.* **skinned, skin-ning** **1 n.** The outside covering of people, animals, fruits, etc. **2 v.** To scrape off skin: to *skin* a knee.
- skirt** /skûrt/ *n.* A piece of clothing that hangs from the waist.
- slant** /slant/ **1 v.** To slope: The floors *slant* in our old house. **2 n.** A slanting line, direction, or surface: The roof has a sharp *slant*.
- sleep-less** /slēp'lis/ *adj.* Not able to sleep; without sleep: I spent a *sleepless* night worrying about the opening game.
- sleep-y** /slē'pē/ *adj.* **sleep-i-er, sleep-i-est** Tired enough to go to sleep; drowsy. —**sleep'i-ly** *adv.* —**sleep'i-ness** *n.*

## society

- slo-gan** /slō'gən/ *n.* An expression or motto used in advertising or campaigning: "Buy one, get one free" is an example of a *slogan*. ▶ *Slogan* comes from the Gaelic word *sluagh-ghairm*, "a battle cry."
- smash** /smash/ *v.* **1** To break into pieces. **2** To hit with great force.
- smooth** /smōōth/ **1 adj.** Without rough spots or lumps. **2 v.** To make something smooth.—**smooth over** To make something seem more pleasant; to try to excuse.—**smooth sailing** Progress made without difficulty; a situation without problems.
- smudge** /smuj/ *v.* **smudged, smudg-ing, n.** **1 v.** To blur, smear, or soil. **2 n.** A dirty mark or spot.
- snag** /snag/ *v.* **snagged, snag-ging** To tear or catch on something sharp.
- snail** /snāl/ *n.* A slow-moving animal with a shell on its back.
- snake** /snāk/ *n.* A crawling reptile with a long, thin body and no legs.
- snap** /snap/ *v.* **snapped, snap-ping, n.** **1 v.** To close or lock into place with a click. **2 n.** A fastener or catch. **3 v.** To try to bite: The dog *snapped* at me. **4 v.** To break suddenly.
- soak** /sōk/ *v.* **1** To keep something in a liquid until it is completely wet. **2** To get very wet. **3** To absorb: *Soak* up the spilled milk with a towel.
- so-cial** /sō'shəl/ *adj.* **1** Living or liking to live with others. **2** Friendly toward other people. **3** Having to do with friendliness and companionship: a *so-cial* event.
- so-ci-e-ty** /sə-sī'ə-tē/ *n., pl. so-ci-e-ties* **1** A group of people that depend on one another in many ways and have certain customs in common. **2** An organization.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, târn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## softness

**soft-ness** /sôft'nis/ *n.* The condition of being gentle or not hard.

**soil**<sup>1</sup> /soil/ *n.* Ground; earth.

**soil**<sup>2</sup> /soil/ *v.* To make or become dirty.

**sol-id** /sol'id/ **1** *n.* Anything that is not a liquid or a gas: Most metals are *solids*. **2** *adj.* Not hollow; being of one material all the way through: a *solid* wooden door.

**sor-row** /sor'ô/ *n.* Great sadness or grief: He expressed deep *sorrow* when he heard that my grandfather had died.

**sound** /sound/ **1** *n.* Anything that can be heard. **2** *v.* To make a sound. **3** *v.* To seem: That *sounds* like a good idea.

**space** /spās/ *n.* **1** The unlimited area that holds the universe: The comet hurled through *space*. **2** A limited area; the area between two things or inside something: There is *space* for one more desk in our room.

**space-craft** /spās'kraft/ *n.* A vehicle that can travel in outer space.

**spade** /spād/ *n.* A tool used for digging that looks like a shovel.

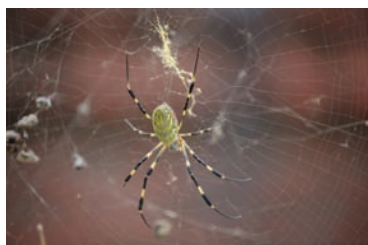
**spar-kle** /spär'kæl/ *v.* **spar-kled, spar-kling** To shine or glitter as if giving off sparks of light: The water *sparkled* in the bright sun.

**speak-er** /spē'kær/ *n.* A person who speaks or gives a speech.

**spe-cial** /spesh'æl/ *adj.* **1** Out of the ordinary: a *special* day. **2** For a particular purpose: a *special* dress.

**speech-less** /spēch'lis/ *adj.* Not speaking or unable to speak.

**spi-der** /spī'dær/ *n.* An insect that has eight legs and spins a web.



## squirrel

**splash** /splash/ **1** *v.* To throw or scatter water or mud. **2** *n.* The act or sound of splashing: a big *splash*.

**splint** /splint/ *n.* A piece of wood or metal used to hold a broken bone in place.

**spoil** /spoil/ *v.* **spoiled or spoilt, spoil-ing** **1** To ruin. **2** To become bad: The butter *spoiled* in the hot sun. **3** To give someone everything he or she wants.

**sponge** /spunj/ *n., v.* **sponged, spong-ing** **1** *n.* A simple water animal whose dried skeleton is used for washing, cleaning, etc. **2** *n.* Any spongelike material that absorbs liquids. **3** *v.* To wipe or clean with a sponge.



**sprin-kle** /spring'kæl/ *v.* **sprin-kled, sprin-kling, n.** **1** *v.* To scatter in drops or bits, as of water or sugar. **2** *v.* To rain lightly. **3** *n.* A light rain. **4** *n.* A small quantity.

**square** /skwâr/ *n.* **1** A shape having four equal sides and four right angles (□). **2** *adj.* Having the shape of a square.

**squeeze** /skwēz/ *v.* **squeezed, squeez-ing** **1** To press hard on or together. **2** To push out by pressure: to *squeeze* oranges. **3** To force or push: We *squeezed* onto the crowded bus.

**squir-rel** /skwûr'æl/ *n.* A small furry animal with sharp teeth and a long bushy tail.



## stable

- sta·ble**<sup>1</sup> /stā'bəl/ *adj.* **sta·bler, sta·blest**  
 1 Not easily moved or shaken; firm.  
 2 Long-lasting or permanent.
- sta·ble**<sup>2</sup> /stā'bəl/ *n., v.* **sta·bled, sta·bling** 1 *n.* A building for housing and feeding horses. 2 *v.* To put or shelter in a stable.
- stamp** /stamp/ 1 *n.* A small piece of paper with glue on the back, used for mailing letters and packages. 2 *n.* A tool that makes a mark: a rubber *stamp*. 3 *v.* To put your foot down hard.
- stand** /stand/ *v.* **stood, stand·ing** 1 To take or keep an upright position: I *stood up* and walked away. 2 To put up with: He can't *stand* loud music.
- starve** /stärv/ *v.* **starved, starv·ing**  
 1 To suffer or die from lack of food.  
 2 To feel extremely hungry.
- state** /stät/ *n.* An area within a country: Ohio is a *state*.
- state·hood** /stät'hōod/ *n.* The condition of being a state: Hawaii applied for *state·hood* in 1959.
- state·ment** /stät'mənt/ *n.* A sentence that tells something. It ends with a period.
- sta·tion** /stā'shən/ 1 *n.* A place, as a building or headquarters, occupied and used by a group working together: a fire *station*. 2 *n.* A place, and usually a building, where trains or buses stop and where passengers get on or off.
- sta·tion·ar·y** /stā'shən-er'ē/ *adj.* Staying or keeping in one place; not moving or movable.
- sta·tion·er·y** /stā'shən-er'ē/ *n.* Materials used in writing, especially letter paper and envelopes.
- stay** /stā/ 1 *v.* To remain. 2 *n.* A visit: a short *stay*.
- steel** /stēl/ 1 *n.* A hard metal that contains iron and carbon. 2 Made of steel: a *steel* tool.

## stream

- step** /step/ *n., v.* **stepped, step·ping**  
 1 *n.* A movement made by lifting your foot and putting it down in another place. 2 *n.* Where you put your foot when going up or down; a stair. 3 *v.* To move by taking steps. 4 *v.* To put your foot down.
- stir** /stūr/ *v.* **stirred, stir·ring, n.** 1 *v.* To move around with a circular motion: *Stir* the soup. 2 *n.* The act of stirring: Give the soup a *stir*. 3 *v.* To move or cause to move, especially slightly: The leaves *stirred*; The wind *stirred* the tall grass.
- stitch** /stich/ 1 *n.* What results when a needle and thread go through material and back again. 2 *v.* To sew.
- stock** /stok/ 1 *n.* Things for sale or future use. 2 *v.* To put in or keep a supply: That shop *stocks* games.
- stood** /stood/ *v.* Past tense and past participle of *stand*.
- stop** /stop/ *v.* **stopped, stop·ping, n.**  
 1 *v.* To come or bring to a halt. 2 *v.* To keep from doing something: She *stopped* him from taking candy. 3 *v.* To leave off doing something. 4 *n.* The act of stopping. 5 *n.* The place where something stops.
- stor·age** /stôr'ij/ *n.* 1 The act of storing or keeping for some future time. 2 A place for storing things.
- sto·ry**<sup>1</sup> /stôr'ē/ *n., pl. sto·ries* 1 An account of something that happened. 2 A tale that is usually made up.
- sto·ry**<sup>2</sup> /stôr'ē/ *n., pl. sto·ries* A floor in a building.
- stove** /stōv/ *n.* Something used for cooking or heating.
- stream** /strēm/ 1 *n.* A small flowing river. 2 *v.* To flow or move: Tears *streamed* down my face. 3 *n.* Any steady flow: a *stream* of traffic.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôok, fôod; up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; th~~at~~; zh in treasure.

## streamline

**stream-line** /strēm'lin'/ *v.* **stream-lined**, **stream-lin-ing** 1 To shape something so that it offers the least resistance to air or water: to *streamline* a race car. 2 *adj. use*: a *streamlined* boat.

**stress** /stres/ 1 *n.* Accent in speech. 2 *v.* To accent a syllable. 3 *n.* Mental tension; worry.

**strike** /stri:k/ *v.* **struck**, **striking**, *n.* 1 *v.* To hit. 2 *v.* To cause to burn by friction. 3 *n.* In baseball, a swing that misses the ball. 4 *v.* To tell the time by sounding a bell: The clock *struck* midnight.

**strug-gle** /strug'əl/ *n., v.* **strug-gled**, **strug-gling** 1 *n.* A strong effort. 2 *v.* To try hard, especially to overcome something. 3 *n.* A fight.

**stub-born** /stub'ərn/ *adj.* Wanting to do things your way; refusing to give in.

**stud-y** /stud'ē/ *v.* **stud-ied**, **stud-y-ing** To work to learn something.

**stum-ble** /stum'bəl/ *v.* **stum-bled**, **stum-bling** 1 To trip. 2 To walk or speak in a shaky way.

**stun** /stun/ *v.* **stunned**, **stun-ning** 1 To knock unconscious; to make dizzy. 2 To shock; to astonish.

**style** /stil/ *n.* The type of fashion popular at the present time.

**sub-ject** /sub'jekt/ *n.* 1 A word or group of words that names whom or what a sentence is about. 2 A course of study.

**sub-scrip-tion** /səb'skrip'shən/ *n.* An agreement that a person will receive a certain number of issues of a magazine or newspaper.

**suc-cess-ful** /sək-ses'fəl/ *adj.* Achieving a desired goal.

**sud-den-ly** /sud'ən-lē/ *adv.* All of a sudden; quickly and without warning.

**suf-fix** /n. suf'iks, v. suf'iks or sə-fiks'/ 1 *n.* One or more syllables added on at the end of a word to make another word of different meaning or function, as

## swept

*-ment, -ness, -ible, -ful, -ous, or -ly, or to make an inflectional form, as -ed, -ing, or -est.* 2 *v.* To add as a suffix.

**sug-ar** /shōōg'ər/ *n.* A sweetener.

**sug-ges-tion** /sə(g)jes'chən/ *n.* 1 The act of suggesting. 2 Something that is suggested.

**su-per-sti-tion** /sōō'pər-stish'ən/ *n.* An unreasoning fear or belief that certain objects, places, or actions have power over the normal course of events: The belief that a black cat crossing your path brings bad luck is a *superstition*.

**sup-per** /sup'ər/ *n.* An evening meal.

**sup-pose** /sə-pōz'/ *v.* **sup-posed**, **sup-pos-ing** To think or believe.

**sur-plus** /sūr'plus/ 1 *n.* The amount remaining above what is used or needed: The farmers' *surplus* of wheat was sold to other countries. 2 *adj.* Extra: *sur-plus* grain.

**sur-round** /sə-round'/ *v.* To close in on all sides; to encircle: An island is *sur-rounded* by water.

**sus-pense-ful** /sə-spens'fəl/ *adj.* Full of uncertainty; full of suspense.

**swal-low<sup>1</sup>** /swol'ō/ *v.* To make food or drink go from your mouth into your stomach.

**swal-low<sup>2</sup>** /swol'ō/ *n.* A small bird with a V-shaped tail.

**swap** /swop/ *v.* **swapped**, **swap-ping** To trade or exchange.

**swarm** /swōrm/ 1 *n.* A large group of insects. 2 *v.* To move together in a group: Bees *swarmed* around the hive.

**sweep** /swēp/ *v.* **swept**, **sweep-ing** 1 To clean, collect, or clear away with a broom or brush. 2 To move, go, or pass swiftly or with force: Fire *swept* through the house.

**swell** /swel/ *v.* **swelled**, **swol-len**, **swell-ing** To get bigger: *swollen* feet.

**swept** /swept/ *v.* Past tense and past participle of *sweep*.



## swerve

**swerve** /swûrv/ *v.* **swerved, swerv-ing,** *n.* 1 *v.* To turn or cause to turn to get out of the way: The car *swerved* to avoid hitting the deer. 2 *n.* The act of swerving.

**swim-mer** /swim'ər/ *n.* A person who swims.

**swirl** /swûrl/ *v.* To move in a twisting or spinning motion: The fan made the dust *swirl* around the room.

**swol-len** /swō'lən/ *v.* Past participle of *swell*.

**syl-la-ble** /sil'ə-bəl/ *n.* A word part that has only one vowel sound.

## T

**tag** /tag/ *n., v.* **tagged, tag-ging** 1 *n.* A small piece of paper; a label. 2 *v.* To attach or put on a tag. 3 *v.* To follow closely: He *tagged* after his sister.

**tai-lor** /tā'lər/ *n.* A person who makes or repairs clothing.

**tan-gle** /tang'gəl/ *v.* **tan-gled, tan-gling,** *n.* 1 *v.* To twist into a mass of knots. 2 *n.* A mass of knots; snarl. 3 *n.* A state of confusion; mess.

**tar-di-ness** /tār'dē-nis/ *n.* The condition of being tardy or late: We talked to Joel about his *tardiness*.

**tar-dy** /tār'dē/ *adj.* **tar-di-er, tar-di-est** Late; not on time.

**tar-get** /tār'git/ *n.* Something that is aimed or shot at.

**tar-iff** /tar'if/ *n.* A tax paid on goods coming into or going out of a country.

**task** /task/ *n.* A chore or job: My neighbor asked me to help her with the *task* of mowing the lawn.

**taste-less** /tāst'lis/ *adj.* Without flavor or taste: *tasteless* stew.

**tax** /taks/ *n., pl. tax-es, v.* 1 *n.* Money paid by people and businesses for the

## throughout

support of their government. 2 *v.* To charge a tax: to *tax* property.

**teach-er** /tē'chər/ *n.* A person who teaches or helps others learn.

**team** /tēm/ *n.* 1 A group of people who work or play together. 2 Two or more animals that do work together.

**tem-po-rar-y** /tem'pə-rer'ē/ *adj.* Not lasting for a long time; not permanent: a *temporary* job.

**ten-der** /ten'dər/ *adj.* 1 Not tough; soft. 2 Gentle and loving. 3 Painful; sensitive to touch.

**tense** /tens/ *adj.* **tens-er, tens-est** 1 Stretched tight; stiff: The rope is *tense*. 2 Nervous; strained.

**ter-ri-ble** /ter'ə-bəl/ *adj.* 1 Causing terror or fear. 2 Extremely bad.

**thank-ful** /thank'fəl/ *adj.* Grateful; full of thanks: a *thankful* friend.

**thirst-y** /thûrs'tē/ *adj.* **thirst-i-er, thirst-i-est** Needing or wanting something to drink.

**thought-ful** /thôt'fəl/ *adj.* 1 Full of thought: You seem *thoughtful* today. 2 Considerate; showing concern.

**threat** /thret/ *n.* 1 A warning that something will be done to hurt or punish. 2 A sign that something bad or unwelcome might happen: a *threat* of showers.

**thrift** /thrift/ *n.* The habit of not wasting anything; the saving of money.

**throat** /thrôt/ *n.* The upper part of the passage that leads from the back of the mouth to the lungs and stomach.

**throne** /thrôn/ *n.* The special chair on which a king, queen, or church official sits during ceremonies.

**through-out** /thrōo-out'/ *adv., prep.* In every part of; all through: The house is carpeted *throughout*. Thanksgiving is observed *throughout* the country.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, êven; if, îce; on, ôver, ôr; bôök, fôod; up, târn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, î in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yôo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; thât; zh in treasure.



## thunder

**thun·der** /thun'dər/ 1 *n.* The loud noise that follows lightning. 2 *v.* To make or sound like thunder: The plane *thundered* down the runway.

**tick·et** /tik'it/ 1 *n.* A card that allows you to get on a train, bus, or airplane or into a theater. 2 *n.* A tag or label. 3 *v.* To attach a ticket to. 4 *n.* A written order to appear in court for breaking a traffic law.

**tim·id** /tim'id/ *adj.* Fearful or shy.

**tis·sue** /tish'oo/ *n.* 1 Light paper used as a handkerchief. 2 Tissue paper.

**to·tal** /tōt'al/ 1 *n.* The whole amount. 2 *adj.* Complete. 3 *v.* To add: She *totaled* the bill.

**tour·na·ment** /tōor'nə-mənt or tūr'nə-mənt/ *n.* A series of games or matches involving many players.

**to·ward** /tōrd or tə-wōrd'/ *prep.* 1 In the direction of; to: We are walking *toward* the library. 2 Near: We left for the beach *toward* afternoon. 3 For: This money is going *toward* your college education.

**tow·el** /toul or tou'al/ *n.* A piece of cloth or paper used for drying.

**traf·fic** /traf'ik/ 1 *n.* The movement of people, cars, buses, etc., through an area or along a route. 2 *adj.* Having to do with traffic.

**tramp** /tramp/ 1 *v.* To walk with a heavy step: to *tramp* up the stairs. 2 *v.* To walk or wander: to *tramp* through the forest. 3 *n.* A person who wanders about and has no home; a hobo.

**tram·ple** /tram'pəl/ *v.* **tram·pled, tram·pling** To flatten by stepping on.

**tray** /trā/ *n.* A flat pan with a low rim used for holding and carrying food or other things.

**trea·ty** /trē'tē/ *n., pl. trea·ties* A written agreement between two or more countries regarding peace or trade.

**trek** /trek/ *v.* **trekked, trek·king, n.** 1 *v.* To make a long, slow, hard journey:

## unbutton

to *trek* through the jungle. 2 *n.* A long hard journey: The *trek* across the desert took ten days.

**trem·ble** /trem'bəl/ *v.* **trem·bled, trem·bling** To shake with fear or cold.

**trick** /trik/ 1 *n.* Something done to fool or cheat. 2 *n.* Something clever or skillful: card *tricks*. 3 *v.* To fool or cheat.

**trot** /trot/ *n., v.* **trot·ted, trot·ting** 1 *n.* The gait of a horse between a walk and a run. 2 *v.* To move at a trot: to *trot* around a track.

**trou·ble·some** /trub'əl-səm/ *adj.* Causing trouble: a *troublesome* person.

**truth·ful** /trōōth'fəl/ *adj.* Honest.

**tun·nel** /tun'al/ *n.* A long, narrow way under a river or through a mountain.

**tur·key** /tūr'kē/ *n.* A large North American bird, used as food.

**turn·pike (tpk)** /tūrn'pīk'/ *n.* A highway on which you must pay a toll.

**tu·tor** /t(y)oo'tər/ 1 *n.* A person who teaches or gives private lessons. 2 *v.* To give or receive private lessons.

**twine** /twīn/ *n.* Strong, heavy string.

**twist** /twist/ *v.* 1 To turn or wind around: The vine was *twisted* around the pole. 2 To turn: to *twist* off the cap. 3 To hurt a part of the body by turning: Tom *twisted* his ankle.

**type** /tīp/ *n., v.* **typed, typ·ing** 1 *n.* A kind; a group of things that have something in common: a *type* of car. 2 *v.* To use a typewriter.

**ty·rant** /tī'rənt/ *n.* 1 An all-powerful ruler. 2 Someone who uses power unfairly or cruelly.

## U

**un·be·liev·a·ble** /un'bi-lē'və-bəl/ *adj.* Not to be believed; incredible; an *unbelievable* story.

**un·but·ton** /un-but'ən/ *v.* To unfasten a button or buttons.

## uncomfortable

**un-com-fort-a-ble** /un-kum'fər-tə-bəl or un-kumf'tə(r)-bəl/ *adj.* Not comfortable; not at ease: an *uncomfortable* bed.

**un-cov-er** /un-kuv'ər/ *v.* 1 To take off the cover of: to *uncover* a pot. 2 To reveal: to *uncover* clues.

**un-der-stand** /un'dər-stand'/ *v.* **un-der-stood, un-der-stand-ing** 1 To grasp the meaning of: Do you *understand* the directions? 2 To accept as fact; to believe: I *understand* that you are moving. 3 To know well: Laraine *understands* fractions.

**un-der-stood** /un'dər-stōd'/ *v.* Past tense and past participle of *understand*.

**un-der-wa-ter** /un'dər-wō'tər/ 1 *adj.* Found or done under the surface of the water: an *underwater* cave. 2 *adv.* Under the surface of the water: The treasure is buried *underwater*.



**un-hap-py** /un-hap'ē/ *adj.* Sad; not happy.

**u-ni-ver-si-ty** /yōō'nə-vûr'sə-tē/ *n., pl.*

**u-ni-ver-si-ties** A school of higher learning consisting of more than one college.

## verb

**un-kind** /un-kīnd'/ *adj.* Cruel; not kind.

**un-like** /un-līk'/ *prep.* Different from; not like: This movie is *unlike* any other I have seen.

**un-load** /un-lōd'/ *v.* To remove or remove the load from: to *unload* the car.

**un-lock** /un-lok'/ *v.* To open or unfasten the lock of: to *unlock* a trunk.

**un-luck-y** /un-luk'ē/ *adj.* Having or bringing bad luck; not lucky.

**un-pleas-ant** /un-plez'ənt/ *adj.* Not agreeable; not pleasant: Cleaning the bird cage is an *unpleasant* task.

**un-self-ish** /un-sel'fish/ *adj.* Caring about others more than yourself; not selfish.

**ur-gent** /ûr'jənt/ *adj.* 1 Requiring quick action or attention: an *urgent* need to conserve water. 2 Insistent; pressing: an *urgent* request.

**use-less** /yōōs'lis/ *adj.* Having no use; worthless: a *useless* old stove.

## V

**va-ca-tion** /vā-kā'shən/ *n.* A period of time for rest and recreation spent away from work or school.

**val-ley** /val'ē/ *n.* A low area between mountains or hills.

**var-y** /vâr'ē/ *v.* **var-ied, var-y-ing** 1 To change or alter: Dad *varies* his jogging route. 2 To be different in some way: My shirts *vary* in color.

**vast** /vast/ *adj.* Very large; huge; enormous: a *vast* desert.—**vast'ly** *adv.* —**vast'ness** *n.*

**veg-e-ta-ble** /vej'(ə)-tə-bəl/ 1 *n.* A plant or part of a plant used as food: Carrots and spinach are *vegetables*. 2 *adj.* Made with or from vegetables: *vegetable* soup.

**verb** /vûrb/ *n.* A word that shows action or being.

act, âte, câre, ärt;

ə=a in ago, e in listen,

egg, êven;

if, îce;

on, ôver, ôr;

bōok, fōod;

up, tûrn;

ï in giraffē, o in pilot, u in circus;

yōō=u in music;

oil; out;

chair; sing; shop; thank; thät; zh in treasure.



## verse

- verse** /vûrs/ *n.* 1 Poetry. 2 A poem.  
3 A stanza or line of a poem or song.  
**vic-to-ry** /vik'tər-ē/ *n., pl. vic-to-ries* The defeat of an enemy or opponent.  
**vil-lage** /vil'ij/ *n.* A small town.  
**vi-rus** /vī'rəs/ *n.* Tiny particles that multiply in certain living cells, causing various diseases.  
**vis-it** /viz'it/ 1 *v.* To go or come to see. 2 *n.* The act of visiting; a short stay as a guest.  
**vo-cab-u-lar-y** /vō-kab'yə-lər'ē/ *n., pl. vo-cab-u-lar-ies* The words that people know and use.  
**vote** /vōt/ *n., v. vot-ed, vot-ing* 1 *n.* A formal expression of choice: She received the most *votes* in the election. 2 *v.* To choose by a vote.  
**vow** /vou/ 1 *n.* A promise or pledge: a *vow* of secrecy. 2 *v.* To make a vow: We *vowed* to love each other.  
**voy-age** /voi'ij/ *n., v. voy-aged, voy-ag-ing* 1 *n.* A trip by water. 2 *n.* Any journey, as through air or space. 3 *v.* To travel on a voyage.

## W

- waist** /wāst/ *n.* The part of your body between your chest and your hips.  
**ware-house** /wār'hous'/ *n.* A building where goods are stored.  
**warmth** /wōrmth/ *n.* 1 The condition or feeling of being warm: the *warmth* of a fire. 2 A warm feeling: The *warmth* of my classmates made me feel welcome.  
**warn-ing** /wōr'ning/ *n.* Something that tells you to expect danger.  
**wart** /wōrt/ *n.* A small, hard lump that grows on the skin.  
**wa-ter-proof** /wō'tər-prōōf' or wot'ər-prōōf'/ *adj.* Able to keep out water: Wear your *waterproof* jacket when you go out in the rain.  
**weak-ness** /wēk'nis/ *n.* The condition of being weak or lacking in strength.

## withdraw

- week-end** /wēk'end'/ *n.* Saturday and Sunday or from Friday evening to the following Monday morning.  
**wharf** /h)wōrf/ *n., pl. wharves* /h)wōrvz/ A large dock where ships load or unload their cargo.  
**when-ev-er** /h)wen'ev'ər/ *adv., conj.* At whatever time: *Whenever* did you get a chance to knit this sweater? We'll leave *whenever* you want.  
**wher-ev-er** /h)wār'ev'ər/ *conj., adv.* In or to whatever place: We'll have the picnic *wherever* you want. *Wherever* did you buy that hat?  
**whirl** /h)wûrl/ *v.* To spin or make to spin around very fast: The skater *whirled* around the rink.  
**whis-per** /h)wis'pər/ 1 *v.* To speak softly. 2 *n.* The act of whispering.  
**whis-tle** /h)wis'əl/ *v. whis-tled, whis-ting, n.* 1 *v.* To make a sharp sound by forcing your breath through your teeth or closed lips. 2 *n.* The act of whistling. 3 *n.* A device you blow to make a sound like a whistle. 4 *v.* To make a whistling sound: The kettle is *whistling*.  
**wife** /wīf/ *n., pl. wives* A married woman.  
**wind-mill** /wind'mil'/ *n.* A machine with sails or vanes that turn by the force of the wind, often used to pump water.



- win-dow** /win'dō/ *n.* An opening in a wall that lets in air and light.  
**wise** /wīz/ *adj. wis-er, wis-est* Having or showing good sense: *wise* advice.  
**with-draw** /with-drō' or with-drô'/ *v. with-drew, with-drawn, with-draw-ing* 1 To take away or remove:



## withdrew

- to *withdraw* money. **2** To move back or to take back: to *withdraw* an offer.
- with-drew** /wĭth·drōō' or with·drōō'/ *v.* Past tense of *withdraw*.
- wolf** /wōōlf/ *n., pl. wolves* /wōōlvz/ A wild animal, like a dog, which hunts in groups and preys on other animals.
- won-der-ful** /wun'dər·fəl/ *adj.* **1** Causing wonder; amazing. **2** Very good.
- wool-en** /wōōl'ən/ *adj.* Made of wool: a *woolen* sweater.
- word** /wŭrd/ *n.* **1** A sound or group of sounds that has one meaning. **2** The letters that stand for a word.
- world** /wŭrld/ *n.* **1** Earth. **2** Everything; the universe. **3** The people living on Earth.



- worm** /wŭrm/ *n.* A small crawling animal having a soft, thin body and no legs.
- wor-ry** /wŭr'ē/ *v.* **wor-ried, wor-ry-ing, n., pl. wor-ries** **1 v.** To be or make someone uneasy or upset. **2 n.** Something that makes you worry.
- wor-ship** /wŭr'ship/ *n., v.* **1 n.** Honor and respect given to God: a house of *worship*. **2 v.** To give honor and respect to, especially to God. **3 v.** To attend services at a house of worship.
- worst** /wŭrst/ *adj.* Least good or well: This was our *worst* harvest.
- worth-less** /wŭrth'lis/ *adj.* Useless; without worth or value.
- worth-while** /wŭrth'(h)wĭl'/ *adj.* Having worth or importance.
- wrap** /rap/ *v.* **wrapped, wrap-ping** **1** To put a cover around something. **2** To wind around; to cover.

## yesterday

- wreath** /rēth/ *n., pl. wreaths* /rēthz/ A circle of flowers or leaves twisted together, usually displayed on windows and doors at Christmas.
- wreck** /rek/ **1 v.** To destroy: Our boat was *wrecked* in the storm. **2 n.** Something that has been ruined.
- wres-tle** /res'əl/ *v.* **wres-tled, wres-tling, n.** **1 v.** To throw or force someone into a particular position on the ground. **2 n.** The act of wrestling. **3 v.** To struggle: to *wrestle* with a problem.
- wrig-gle** /rig'əl/ *v.* **wrig-gled, wrig-gling** **1** To squirm or twist. **2** To move by twisting: The caterpillar *wriggled* down my arm.
- wring** /ring/ *v.* **wrung** /rung/, **wring-ing** To squeeze liquid out by twisting.
- wrin-kle** /ring'kəl/ *n., v.* **wrin-kled, wrin-king** **1 n.** A small fold, usually on cloth or skin: deep *wrinkles* on his forehead. **2 v.** To make wrinkles in; to become wrinkled: My skirt *wrinkled* when I sat down.
- wrist** /rist/ *n.* The place where your hand joins your arm.
- wrist-watch** /rist'woch'/ *n.* A small time-piece usually worn on the wrist.
- write** /rīt/ *v.* **wrote, writ-ten, writ-ing** **1** To make or form letters and words. **2** To make up stories; to be an author. **3** To send a letter.
- writ-ten** /rit'an/ *v.* Past participle of *write*.
- wrong** /rông/ *adj.* **1** Not right; not true. **2** Not working or acting properly: Something is *wrong* with my watch.

## Y

- yes-ter-day** /yes'tər·dē or yes'tər·dā'/ *n.* The day before today.

act, âte, câre, ârt;      egg, ēven;      if, ĭce;      on, ōver, ôr;      bōok, fōod;      up, tŭrn;  
 æ = a in ago, e in listen, ĭ in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus;      yōō = u in music;      oil;      out;  
                          chair; sing; shop; thank; thŭt;      zh in treasure.

# SPELLING THESAURUS



## What Is a Thesaurus?

A **thesaurus** lists words and their synonyms. Like a dictionary, a thesaurus lists words in alphabetical order. Each of these words is called an **entry word**. A list of synonyms follows the entry word. Sometimes a thesaurus lists antonyms.

Look at the parts of this thesaurus entry for the word *customer*.

The **entry word** is in red letters. It is followed by the part of speech and a definition. An **example sentence** shows how the word can be used.

**customer** *n.* A buyer of goods or services. Some store owners say that the **customer** is always right.

**Synonyms** for the entry word are in *italic* letters. Each synonym is followed by a definition and an example sentence.

*buyer* A person who buys. The dealer is offering a discount to every car *buyer*.  
*consumer* A person who uses goods and services. We are all *consumers* of electricity.  
*shopper* A person who visits shops or stores to purchase or look at goods. The stores are filled with *shoppers* before holidays.  
*user* A person or thing that consumes or spends. Airplanes are among the largest *users* of fuel.

If an **antonym** is given, it is printed in dark letters.

**ANTONYMS:** merchant, provider, salesperson, seller



## How to Use Your Spelling Thesaurus

Suppose you are writing a business letter to a department store. You read over your work and see you have used the word *customer* too many times. You decide to use the Spelling Thesaurus to find some synonyms. Here are the steps you should follow.

1. Look for the word in the Thesaurus Index. The Index lists every word in the Thesaurus.
2. Find the word in the Index. This is what you will find:

*customer* **n.**

The red print tells you that *customer* is an entry word.

3. Turn to the correct page in the Spelling Thesaurus and read the entry carefully. Choose the synonym or synonyms that will make your writing clearer and stronger.

**Remember:** Not every synonym will have the meaning you want. Look at the sample entry for *customer* on page 206. Which synonyms for *customer* would fit best in your business letter?

- Sometimes you may find a word listed in the Index like this:

*shopper* **customer** *n.*

This means you will find the word *shopper* listed as a synonym under the entry word *customer*. Since *shopper* is not printed in red, it is not an entry word. If you look for *shopper* in the Spelling Thesaurus as an entry word under the letter *S*, you will not find it.

- You will also see some lines in the Index that look like this:

**seller** **customer** *n.*

This means that *seller* is listed as an antonym under the entry word *customer*.

# THESAURUS •

## INDEX

### A

abandon *v.*  
 absurd *comic adj.*  
 accept *doubt v.*  
 ache *n.*  
 acknowledge *admit v.*  
 admire *regard v.*  
 admit *v.*  
 adventurer *explorer n.*  
 advice *n.*  
 afraid *adj.*  
 afraid *fearless adj.*  
 agree *disagree v.*  
 agreeable *enjoyable adj.*  
 agreeable *unpleasant adj.*  
 agreement *n.*  
 aid *hinder v.*  
 aim *goal n.*  
 alarmed *afraid adj.*  
 alarmed *fearless adj.*  
 alert *clever adj.*  
 ally *n.*  
 alter *change v.*  
 ambition *goal n.*  
 amusing *comic adj.*  
 anchor *fasten v.*  
 annoy *v.*  
 annoying *unpleasant adj.*  
 answer *question v.*  
 answer *reply v.*  
 anxious *nervous adj.*  
 apprentice *pupil n.*  
 appropriate *proper adj.*  
 argue *disagree v.*  
 argument *discussion n.*  
 argument *reason n.*  
 article *paper n.*  
 assignment *task n.*  
 assist *hinder v.*  
 associate *ally n.*  
 assure *promise v.*  
 astonish *shock v.*  
 astound *shock v.*  
 astronaut *explorer n.*

attach *fasten v.*  
 attack *v.*  
 attractive *beautiful adj.*  
 average *particular adj.*  
 award *prize n.*

### B

badger *annoy v.*  
 baffle *v.*  
 balanced *even adj.*  
 bare *conceal v.*  
 bare *reveal v.*  
 bargain *n.*  
 bargain *swap v.*  
 barter *swap v.*  
 bashful *shy adj.*  
 basic *major adj.*  
 battle *struggle n.*  
 beat *defeat v.*  
 beautiful *adj.*  
 begin *stop v.*  
 belief *idea n.*  
 betray *conceal v.*  
 betray *reveal v.*  
 bewilder *baffle v.*  
 bind *fasten v.*  
 bite *v.*  
 bitter *enjoyable adj.*  
 blanket *wrap v.*  
 blend *v.*  
 bliss *happiness n.*  
 block *hinder v.*  
 blunder *n.*  
 blur *soil v.*  
 bold *afraid adj.*  
 bold *fearless adj.*  
 bold *shy adj.*  
 boost *v.*  
 boring *wonderful adj.*  
 boss *leader n.*  
 bother *annoy v.*  
 brave *afraid adj.*  
 brave *fearless adj.*  
 break *crack n.*

break *repair v.*  
 brief *short adj.*  
 bright *cheerful adj.*  
 bright *dim adj.*  
 broad *vast adj.*  
 brook *stream n.*  
 bumpy *smooth adj.*  
 bunch *n.*  
 bundle *parcel n.*  
 bundle *wrap v.*  
 burden *n.*  
 business *n.*  
 busy *quiet adj.*  
 buy *bargain n.*  
 buyer *customer n.*

### C

calm *nervous adj.*  
 calm *quiet adj.*  
 calm *worry v.*  
 can *preserve v.*  
 captain *leader n.*  
 capture *catch v.*  
 career *business n.*  
 careful *careless adj.*  
 careless *adj.*  
 carnival *n.*  
 carve *v.*  
 catch *v.*  
 cautious *careless adj.*  
 celebrate *honor v.*  
 central *major adj.*  
 challenge *question v.*  
 chance *fortune n.*  
 change *v.*  
 charge *attack v.*  
 cheerful *adj.*  
 cheerful *unhappy adj.*  
 cheerfulness *sadness n.*  
 chief *major adj.*  
 chisel *carve v.*  
 chore *task n.*  
 circuit *direction n.*  
 circus *carnival n.*

civil *adj.*  
 class **bunch** *n.*  
 clean **soil** *v.*  
 clear **dim** *adj.*  
 clever *adj.*  
 climb **move** *v.*  
 cloudburst **shower** *n.*  
 club **team** *n.*  
 clutch **grab** *v.*  
 coach **teacher** *n.*  
 coarse **smooth** *adj.*  
 colonist **settler** *n.*  
 combat **struggle** *n.*  
 comfortable **cozy** *adj.*  
 comic *adj.*  
 commerce *n.*  
 common **particular** *adj.*  
 common **wonderful** *adj.*  
 community **bunch** *n.*  
 composition **paper** *n.*  
 conceal *v.*  
 conceal **reveal** *v.*  
 confess **admit** *v.*  
 confident **shy** *adj.*  
 conflict **struggle** *n.*  
 confuse **baffle** *v.*  
 conquer **defeat** *v.*  
 constant **endless** *adj.*  
 constant **faithful** *adj.*  
 consumer **customer** *n.*  
 contest **question** *v.*  
 contest **struggle** *n.*  
 continual **endless** *adj.*  
 continue **hesitate** *v.*  
 continuous **endless** *adj.*  
 contract **agreement** *n.*  
 contract **increase** *v.*  
 convention **fashion** *n.*  
 conversation **discussion** *n.*  
 correct **change** *v.*  
 correct **proper** *adj.*  
 counsel **advice** *n.*  
 countless **endless** *adj.*  
 country *n.*  
 courageous **afraid** *adj.*  
 courageous **fearless** *adj.*  
 course **direction** *n.*  
 courteous **civil** *adj.*

cover **conceal** *v.*  
 cover **reveal** *v.*  
 cozy *adj.*  
 crack *n.*  
 cram **squeeze** *v.*  
 cramp **ache** *n.*  
 crash **strike** *v.*  
 creek **stream** *n.*  
 crew **team** *n.*  
 critical **urgent** *adj.*  
 crooked **honest** *adj.*  
 crowd **bunch** *n.*  
 crowd **squeeze** *v.*  
 cruel **tender** *adj.*  
 cruel **unkind** *adj.*  
 cunning **clever** *adj.*  
 cure **preserve** *v.*  
 curve **twist** *v.*  
 custom **fashion** *n.*  
 customer *n.*

## D

damage *v.*  
 damage **repair** *v.*  
 dance **move** *v.*  
 danger *n.*  
 daring **fearless** *adj.*  
 daze **baffle** *v.*  
 deafening **loud** *adj.*  
 deal **swap** *v.*  
 debate **disagree** *v.*  
 debate **discussion** *n.*  
 decay **spoil** *v.*  
 deceive **mislead** *v.*  
 decent **proper** *adj.*  
 decrease **increase** *v.*  
 defeat *v.*  
 defend **guard** *v.*  
 definite **dim** *adj.*  
 delay **hesitate** *v.*  
 delay **hinder** *v.*  
 delicate **helpless** *adj.*  
 delight **happiness** *n.*  
 delight **sadness** *n.*  
 delightful **enjoyable** *adj.*  
 deny **admit** *v.*  
 dependable **faithful** *adj.*  
 desert **abandon** *v.*

design **draw** *v.*  
 desire *v.*  
 destroy **damage** *v.*  
 destroy **repair** *v.*  
 dialogue **discussion** *n.*  
 difficulty **burden** *n.*  
 dim *adj.*  
 direction *n.*  
 dirty **soil** *v.*  
 disagree *v.*  
 discount **bargain** *n.*  
 discussion *n.*  
 disguise **change** *v.*  
 disguise **conceal** *v.*  
 disguise **reveal** *v.*  
 disgusting **unpleasant** *adj.*  
 dishonest **honest** *adj.*  
 disloyal **faithful** *adj.*  
 dismay **shock** *v.*  
 distinct **dim** *adj.*  
 distress **worry** *v.*  
 distrust **doubt** *v.*  
 disturb **annoy** *v.*  
 doubt *v.*  
 downpour **shower** *n.*  
 draft **draw** *v.*  
 drag **haul** *v.*  
 draw *v.*  
 draw **haul** *v.*  
 dread **horror** *n.*  
 drift *v.*  
 drizzle **shower** *n.*  
 drop **boost** *v.*  
 dull **dim** *adj.*  
 dumb **silent** *adj.*  
 duty **task** *n.*  
 dwell **occupy** *v.*

## E

ease **hinder** *v.*  
 emperor **ruler** *n.*  
 empire **country** *n.*  
 end **goal** *n.*  
 ending **endless** *adj.*  
 endless *adj.*  
 enemy **ally** *n.*  
 energy **force** *n.*



# THESAURUS •

## INDEX

engrave **carve** v.  
 enjoyable **adj.**  
 enlarge **increase** v.  
 enormous **vast** adj.  
 envelop **wrap** v.  
 equal **even** adj.  
 error **blunder** n.  
 escort **guard** v.  
 essay **paper** n.  
 eternal **endless** adj.  
 even **adj.**  
 even **smooth** adj.  
 examine **question** v.  
 exchange **swap** v.  
 excuse **overlook** v.  
 excuse **reason** n.  
 explanation **reason** n.  
 explorer **n.**  
 expression **slogan** n.  
 expressway **highway** n.  
 extend **increase** v.

### F

fable **story** n.  
 faint **dim** adj.  
 fair **beautiful** adj.  
 fair **carnival** n.  
 fair **even** adj.  
 fair **honest** adj.  
 faithful **adj.**  
 fall **defeat** v.  
 fashion **n.**  
 fasten **v.**  
 fate **fortune** n.  
 fearful **afraid** adj.  
 fearful **fearless** adj.  
 fearless **adj.**  
 fearless **afraid** adj.  
 feeble **forceful** adj.  
 feeble **helpless** adj.  
 feeling **idea** n.  
 festival **carnival** n.  
 fiction **story** n.  
 field **pasture** n.  
 finishing **endless** adj.  
 firm **rigid** adj.  
 fitting **proper** adj.  
 fix **damage** v.

fix **repair** v.  
 fixed **rigid** adj.  
 flag **stop** v.  
 flat **smooth** adj.  
 float **drift** v.  
 flock **bunch** n.  
 flow **drift** v.  
 flutter **fly** v.  
 fly **v.**  
 foe **ally** n.  
 follower **leader** n.  
 fool **mislead** v.  
 force **n.**  
 force **team** n.  
 forceful **adj.**  
 fortune **n.**  
 fracture **crack** n.  
 frail **forceful** adj.  
 frail **helpless** adj.  
 frank **honest** adj.  
 free **catch** v.  
 fret **worry** v.  
 friend **ally** n.  
 fright **horror** n.  
 frightened **afraid** adj.  
 frightened **fearless** adj.  
 fumble **blunder** n.  
 funny **comic** adj.

### G

gallant **civil** adj.  
 gallant **fearless** adj.  
 gap **crack** n.  
 general **leader** n.  
 gentle **tender** adj.  
 glad **cheerful** adj.  
 glad **unhappy** adj.  
 glaring **dim** adj.  
 glide **fly** v.  
 glisten **sparkle** v.  
 gloomy **cheerful** adj.  
 gloomy **dim** adj.  
 gloomy **unhappy** adj.  
 gnaw **bite** v.  
 goal **n.**  
 gorgeous **beautiful** adj.  
 governor **ruler** n.  
 grab **v.**

grab **catch** v.  
 grant **admit** v.  
 grasp **catch** v.  
 grasp **grab** v.  
 grave **serious** adj.  
 grief **happiness** n.  
 grief **sadness** n.  
 grip **grab** v.  
 ground **reason** n.  
 grumble **whisper** v.  
 guard **v.**  
 guide **leader** n.

### H

halt **stop** v.  
 handsome **beautiful** adj.  
 happiness **n.**  
 happiness **sadness** n.  
 happy **cheerful** adj.  
 happy **unhappy** adj.  
 hard **rigid** adj.  
 hard **tender** adj.  
 hardship **burden** n.  
 harm **damage** v.  
 harsh **dim** adj.  
 harsh **enjoyable** adj.  
 hasty **short** adj.  
 haul **v.**  
 heartless **unkind** adj.  
 help **hinder** v.  
 helpless **adj.**  
 herd **bunch** n.  
 hesitate **v.**  
 hide **conceal** v.  
 hide **reveal** v.  
 highway **n.**  
 hinder **v.**  
 hoist **boost** v.  
 homely **beautiful** adj.  
 homey **cozy** adj.  
 honest **adj.**  
 honor **v.**  
 honor **regard** v.  
 honorable **honest** adj.  
 horror **n.**  
 hover **fly** v.  
 howl **shout** v.  
 howl **whisper** v.

huge **vast** adj.  
humorous **comic** adj.

## I

idea **n.**  
ignore **notice** v.  
ignore **overlook** v.  
immense **vast** adj.  
immigrant **settler** n.  
impolite **civil** adj.  
important **major** adj.  
important **urgent** adj.  
important **worthwhile** adj.  
improper **proper** adj.  
improve **damage** v.  
increase **v.**  
incredible **wonderful** adj.  
indecent **proper** adj.  
individual **particular** adj.  
industry **commerce** n.  
inflate **increase** v.  
inquire **question** v.  
inquire **reply** v.  
intelligent **clever** adj.  
intense **forceful** adj.  
intent **goal** n.  
interrupt **hinder** v.

## J

jam **squeeze** v.  
jest **joke** n.  
jingle **slogan** n.  
job **business** n.  
join **fasten** v.  
joke **n.**  
journey **trek** n.  
joy **happiness** n.  
joy **sadness** n.  
joyful **cheerful** adj.  
joyful **unhappy** adj.  
jumpy **nervous** adj.

## K

keep **honor** v.

kind **tender** adj.  
kind **unkind** adj.  
kingdom **country** n.  
knead **blend** v.  
knock **strike** v.  
knot **fasten** v.

## L

large **short** adj.  
leader **n.**  
league **team** n.  
leave **abandon** v.  
legend **story** n.  
level **even** adj.  
level **smooth** adj.  
lift **boost** v.  
light **serious** adj.  
limit **hinder** v.  
live **occupy** v.  
lodge **occupy** v.  
long **desire** v.  
long **short** adj.  
loose **rigid** adj.  
lose **defeat** v.  
lot **fortune** n.  
loud **adj.**  
loud **silent** adj.  
lovely **beautiful** adj.  
lower **boost** v.  
loyal **faithful** adj.  
luck **fortune** n.

## M

magnify **increase** v.  
main **major** adj.  
major **adj.**  
manner **fashion** n.  
mark **soil** v.  
marvelous **wonderful** adj.  
mask **conceal** v.  
meadow **pasture** n.  
mean **unkind** adj.  
meaningful **major** adj.  
medal **prize** n.  
meddle **hinder** v.  
mend **repair** v.  
merchant **customer** n.

merry **cheerful** adj.  
method **fashion** n.  
might **force** n.  
minor **major** adj.  
minor **serious** adj.  
mischief **joke** n.  
misfortune **burden** n.  
mislead **v.**  
miss **notice** v.  
miss **overlook** v.  
mistake **blunder** n.  
mix **blend** v.  
modest **shy** adj.  
modest **vast** adj.  
mold **spoil** v.  
monarch **ruler** n.  
motion **move** v.  
motto **slogan** n.  
move **n.**  
mumble **shout** v.  
mumble **whisper** v.  
murmur **shout** v.  
murmur **whisper** v.  
myth **story** n.

## N

narrative **story** n.  
narrow **vast** adj.  
nasty **unpleasant** adj.  
nation **country** n.  
navigator **explorer** n.  
neglect **notice** v.  
neglect **overlook** v.  
nervous **adj.**  
nervous **quiet** adj.  
nibble **bite** v.  
noisy **loud** adj.  
noisy **quiet** adj.  
noisy **silent** adj.  
nonfiction **story** n.  
normal **particular** adj.  
note **notice** v.  
note **overlook** v.  
notice **v.**  
notice **overlook** v.  
notion **idea** n.



### O

observe **honor** v.  
 observe **notice** v.  
 observe **overlook** v.  
 occupation **business** n.  
 officer **leader** n.  
 official **leader** n.  
 opinion **idea** n.  
 ordinary **particular** adj.  
 outfit **team** n.  
 outwit **mislead** v.  
 overlook v.  
 overlook **notice** v.

### P

package **parcel** n.  
 paddle **drift** v.  
 pain **ache** n.  
 painful **enjoyable** adj.  
 panic **horror** n.  
 paper n.  
 parcel n.  
 particular adj.  
 partner **ally** n.  
 pasture n.  
 patch **repair** v.  
 path **direction** n.  
 pause **hesitate** v.  
 peaceful **quiet** adj.  
 peril **danger** n.  
 perplex **baffle** v.  
 pickle **preserve** v.  
 pioneer **settler** n.  
 plain **beautiful** adj.  
 plain **pasture** n.  
 pleasant **enjoyable** adj.  
 pleasant **unpleasant** adj.  
 pleasing **unpleasant** adj.  
 pledge **promise** v.  
 polite **civil** adj.  
 power **force** n.  
 powerful **forceful** adj.  
 prairie **pasture** n.  
 prank **joke** n.  
 preserve v.  
 press **squeeze** v.  
 pressing **urgent** adj.

principal **major** adj.  
 prize n.  
 proceed **hesitate** v.  
 profession **business** n.  
 profitable **worthwhile** adj.  
 promise v.  
 proof **reason** n.  
 proper adj.  
 protect **guard** v.  
 provider **customer** n.  
 pupil n.  
 purpose **goal** n.  
 puzzle **baffle** v.

### Q

quake **shake** v.  
 question v.  
 question **reply** v.  
 quick **clever** adj.  
 quick **short** adj.  
 quiet adj.  
 quiet **loud** adj.  
 quiet **silent** adj.  
 quit **abandon** v.  
 quit **stop** v.  
 quiver **shake** v.  
 quiz **question** v.

### R

raise **boost** v.  
 range **pasture** n.  
 rare **particular** adj.  
 reason n.  
 reckless **careless** adj.  
 recognize **admit** v.  
 reduce **increase** v.  
 refuse **desire** v.  
 regard v.  
 regard **notice** v.  
 reject **desire** v.  
 relaxed **nervous** adj.  
 relaxed **rigid** adj.  
 release **catch** v.  
 release **fasten** v.  
 reliable **faithful** adj.  
 repair v.  
 repair **damage** v.

reply v.  
 reply **question** v.  
 report **paper** n.  
 request **reply** v.  
 respect **regard** v.  
 respectful **civil** adj.  
 respond **question** v.  
 respond **reply** v.  
 responsibility **task** n.  
 restful **cozy** adj.  
 restful **quiet** adj.  
 restless **nervous** adj.  
 restore **repair** v.  
 retreat **attack** v.  
 return **reply** v.  
 reveal v.  
 reveal **conceal** v.  
 reward **prize** n.  
 ridiculous **comic** adj.  
 rigid adj.  
 risk **danger** n.  
 river **stream** n.  
 rot **spoil** v.  
 rough **smooth** adj.  
 route **direction** n.  
 route **highway** n.  
 rub **skin** v.  
 rude **civil** adj.  
 ruin **damage** v.  
 ruler n.

### S

sad **cheerful** adj.  
 sad **unhappy** adj.  
 sadness n.  
 sadness **happiness** n.  
 sail **drift** v.  
 sail **fly** v.  
 sale **bargain** n.  
 salesperson **customer** n.  
 salt **preserve** v.  
 scared **afraid** adj.  
 scared **fearless** adj.  
 scatter **splash** v.  
 scholar **pupil** n.  
 scout **explorer** n.  
 scrape **skin** v.  
 scratch **skin** v.



scream **shout** v.  
 scream **whisper** v.  
 scrub **soil** v.  
 secure **fasten** v.  
 seize **catch** v.  
 seize **grab** v.  
 seller **customer** n.  
 separate **blend** v.  
 serious **adj.**  
 serious **comic** adj.  
 settlement **agreement** n.  
 settler **n.**  
 shake **v.**  
 shape **carve** v.  
 sharp **clever** adj.  
 shatter **damage** v.  
 shelter **guard** v.  
 shield **guard** v.  
 shimmer **sparkle** v.  
 shine **sparkle** v.  
 shiver **shake** v.  
 shock **v.**  
 shopper **customer** n.  
 short **adj.**  
 shout **v.**  
 shout **whisper** v.  
 show **conceal** v.  
 show **reveal** v.  
 shower **n.**  
 shower **splash** v.  
 shriek **shout** v.  
 shriek **whisper** v.  
 shrill **loud** adj.  
 shrink **increase** v.  
 shudder **shake** v.  
 shy **adj.**  
 silent **adj.**  
 silent **loud** adj.  
 simple **clever** adj.  
 sink **drift** v.  
 sketch **draw** v.  
 skin **v.**  
 slack **rigid** adj.  
 slogan **n.**  
 slow **clever** adj.  
 slow **short** adj.  
 small **major** adj.  
 small **short** adj.  
 small **vast** adj.

smart **ache** n.  
 smart **clever** adj.  
 smash **strike** v.  
 smear **soil** v.  
 smoke **preserve** v.  
 smooth **adj.**  
 smudge **soil** v.  
 snap **bite** v.  
 snatch **catch** v.  
 snatch **grab** v.  
 snug **cozy** adj.  
 soar **fly** v.  
 sober **serious** adj.  
 society **team** n.  
 soft **dim** adj.  
 soft **tender** adj.  
 soil **v.**  
 solemn **comic** adj.  
 solemn **serious** adj.  
 soothe **worry** v.  
 sore **ache** n.  
 sorrow **happiness** n.  
 sorrow **sadness** n.  
 sorrowful **cheerful** adj.  
 sorrowful **unhappy** adj.  
 sparkle **v.**  
 special **particular** adj.  
 speechless **silent** adj.  
 spiteful **unkind** adj.  
 splash **v.**  
 spoil **v.**  
 spoil **damage** v.  
 spray **splash** v.  
 spring **stream** n.  
 sprinkle **shower** n.  
 sprinkle **splash** v.  
 squeeze **v.**  
 stain **soil** v.  
 stare **notice** v.  
 start **stop** v.  
 startle **shock** v.  
 state **country** n.  
 step **v.**  
 stiff **rigid** adj.  
 still **loud** adj.  
 still **silent** adj.  
 sting **ache** n.  
 stir **blend** v.  
 stop **v.**

stop **abandon** v.  
 stopping **endless** adj.  
 storm **attack** v.  
 story **n.**  
 stream **n.**  
 strength **force** n.  
 strike **v.**  
 strike **attack** v.  
 stroll **step** v.  
 strong **forceful** adj.  
 struggle **n.**  
 student **pupil** n.  
 stuff **squeeze** v.  
 stumble **step** v.  
 stun **shock** v.  
 stupid **clever** adj.  
 suggestion **advice** n.  
 suitable **proper** adj.  
 sunny **cheerful** adj.  
 surprise **shock** v.  
 surrender **defeat** v.  
 suspect **doubt** v.  
 swap **v.**  
 swear **promise** v.  
 sweep **move** v.  
 swell **increase** v.  
 swerve **twist** v.  
 swim **drift** v.  
 swirl **twist** v.  
 switch **swap** v.

## T

tale **story** n.  
 tall **short** adj.  
 target **goal** n.  
 task **n.**  
 teacher **n.**  
 team **n.**  
 tease **annoy** v.  
 tender **adj.**  
 tense **nervous** adj.  
 tense **rigid** adj.  
 terror **horror** n.  
 thought **idea** n.  
 thoughtful **serious** adj.  
 threat **danger** n.  
 thunderous **loud** adj.  
 timid **afraid** adj.

# THESAURUS •

## INDEX

timid **shy** adj.  
 tiny **vast** adj.  
 tour **trek** n.  
 tow **haul** v.  
 track **direction** n.  
 trade **business** n.  
 trade **commerce** n.  
 trade **swap** v.  
 trainer **teacher** n.  
 tramp **step** v.  
 trample **step** v.  
 travel **trek** n.  
 treaty **agreement** n.  
**trek** n.  
 tremble **shake** v.  
 trial **burden** n.  
 trick **joke** n.  
 trick **mislead** v.  
 trip **trek** n.  
 triumph **defeat** v.  
 trot **move** v.  
 trouble **annoy** v.  
 trouble **happiness** n.  
 trouble **sadness** n.  
 trouble **worry** v.  
 troublesome **unpleasant** adj.  
 trudge **step** v.  
 true **faithful** adj.  
 trust **doubt** v.  
 trustworthy **faithful** adj.  
 truthful **honest** adj.  
 tundra **pasture** n.  
 turnpike **highway** n.  
 tutor **teacher** n.  
 twist v.  
 tyrant **ruler** n.

### U

ugly **beautiful** adj.  
 unbalanced **even** adj.

uncomfortable **cozy** adj.  
 uncover **conceal** v.  
 uncover **reveal** v.  
 uncover **wrap** v.  
 undependable **faithful** adj.  
 undisturbed **nervous** adj.  
 uneasy **nervous** adj.  
 unequal **even** adj.  
 uneven **even** adj.  
 unfair **even** adj.  
 unfaithful **faithful** adj.  
 unfasten **fasten** v.  
**unhappy** adj.  
 unhappy **cheerful** adj.  
 unimportant **major** adj.  
 unimportant **serious** adj.  
 unimportant **urgent** adj.  
**unkind** adj.  
 unkind **tender** adj.  
 unpleasant adj.  
 unpleasant **enjoyable** adj.  
 unsuitable **proper** adj.  
 untrue **faithful** adj.  
 unusual **particular** adj.  
 unwrap **wrap** v.  
 upset **worry** v.  
**urgent** adj.  
 useful **worthwhile** adj.  
 useless **worthwhile** adj.  
 user **customer** n.  
 usual **particular** adj.  
 usual **wonderful** adj.

### V

vague **dim** adj.  
 valuable **worthwhile** adj.  
 value **regard** v.  
**vast** adj.

vibrate **shake** v.  
 vicious **unkind** adj.  
 view **idea** n.  
 vigor **force** n.  
 vow **promise** v.  
 voyage **trek** n.  
 voyager **explorer** n.

### W

wail **shout** v.  
 wail **whisper** v.  
 wait **hesitate** v.  
 want **desire** v.  
 warning **advice** n.  
 wash **soil** v.  
 way **fashion** n.  
 weak **forceful** adj.  
 weak **helpless** adj.  
 weakness **force** n.  
 whip **blend** v.  
 whirl **twist** v.  
**whisper** v.  
 whisper **shout** v.  
 whoop **shout** v.  
 wild **careless** adj.  
 wish **desire** v.  
 withdraw **abandon** v.  
 withdraw **attack** v.  
 wonder **doubt** v.  
**wonderful** adj.  
 wondrous **wonderful** adj.  
 worry v.  
 worthless **worthwhile** adj.  
**worthwhile** adj.  
 wrap v.  
 wreck **damage** v.  
 wreck **repair** v.  
 wriggle **twist** v.  
 wring **twist** v.



## abandon

### A

**abandon** *v.* To give up completely; to desert or leave behind. May found a fawn that had been **abandoned** in the forest.

**desert** To leave a person, place or thing, especially if one has a duty to stay; abandon. My friends *deserted* me when they learned that I had to mow the lawn.

**leave** To go or depart from; to abandon; desert. We had to *leave* before the ball game was over.

**quit** To give up a job. My father *quit* his job when he started his own business.

**stop** To leave off doing something. When the fire alarm rings, *stop* whatever you are doing and leave the building.

**withdraw** To move back or to take back. The candidate *withdrew* from the election.

**ache** *n.* A dull, steady pain. I had an **ache** in my shoulder after playing tennis.

**cramp** A sudden, painful tightening of a muscle, often in the leg or foot.

Wearing proper shoes will help keep you from getting *cramps* in your legs.

**pain** An ache or soreness. A *pain* is often your body's way of telling you to rest.

**smart** A sharp, stinging sensation. The *smart* on my finger reminded me of where I had scratched it.

**sore** A place on the body where the skin is broken, bruised, or inflamed. The nurse put a bandage on the *sore*.

**sting** The wound or the pain caused by a sting. The bee *sting* on my leg bothered me all night.

**admit** *v.* To confess. I **admit** that I accidentally broke the window.

**acknowledge** To admit the truth or reality of. The opponent *acknowledged* the senator as the winner of the election.

**confess** To admit (guilt, love, shame, etc.).

## agreement

My sister *confessed* that she really hadn't done her homework.

**grant** To accept as true; concede. I *grant* that you play the piano better than I do.

**recognize** To perceive as true; realize.

Carol *recognizes* that it is good to read to children.

ANTONYM: **deny**

**advice** *n.* A suggestion made or an opinion given. Can you give me some **advice** about how to solve this math problem?

**counsel** Advice. The lawyer gave us good *counsel* before we signed the papers.

**suggestion** Something that is suggested. I followed your *suggestion*, and it worked.

**warning** Something that tells you to expect danger. The sound of cracking ice was a *warning* that the ice was too thin for skating.

**afraid** *adj.* Scared. The children were **afraid** of the old house.

**alarmed** Filled with fear; frightened.

Though everyone was *alarmed* when the fire broke out, nobody panicked.

**fearful** Frightened; full of fear. There's no reason to be *fearful* of most of the animals in the forest.

**frightened** Filled with sudden fear; scared. The lightning *frightened* my baby brother.

**scared** Afraid. Many people are *scared* of the dark.

**timid** Fearful or shy. Rabbits are so *timid* that they run from any noise.

ANTONYMS: **bold, brave, courageous, fearless**

**agreement** *n.* A contract or treaty. The bosses and the workers signed a salary **agreement**.

**contract** A binding agreement between two or more parties, especially a



# THESAURUS

## ally

written one. The rock group signed a *contract* with a record company.  
*settlement* An agreement. The two sides reached a *settlement* without going to court.

*treaty* A written agreement between two or more countries regarding peace or trade. The United States and Japan signed a *treaty* that will increase trade between the countries.

**ally** *n.* A person or country joined with another for a purpose. France was an **ally** to the colonists in the Revolutionary War.

*associate* A person connected with another, as a fellow worker, companion, or partner. The company president had lunch with a business *associate*.

*friend* Someone on the same side, as contrasted with a foe. Mexico and Canada are important *friends* of the United States.

*partner* A person who is associated with another or others, especially in a business where the profits and losses are shared. My father and my aunt are *partners* in a computer company.

ANTONYMS: **enemy, foe**

**annoy** *v.* To bother. It **annoys** me when people talk in theaters.

*badger* To nag at; pester; tease. They *badgered* the star to sign their programs.

*bother* To annoy or trouble. The neighbor's barking dog *bothered* Pat all morning.

*disturb* To break in on or interrupt, especially with noise or disorder. I'll make sure that no one *disturbs* you while you study.

*tease* To pick on or fool with (another) for fun, in order to annoy or provoke. It is mean to *tease* other people.

*trouble* To make or become distressed,

## bargain

annoyed, worried, or ill. I was very *troubled* until you called to say you'd been delayed.

**attack** *v.* To begin fighting, as in a battle; to hurt. The troops **attacked** the enemy at dawn.

*charge* To attack or rush upon violently. The soldiers *charged* the fort.

*storm* To attack or assault. The soldiers *stormed* the fort and captured it.

*strike* To attack or assault. The enemy *struck* when the troops were not expecting it.

ANTONYMS: **retreat, withdraw**

## B

**baffle** *v.* To confuse completely; to bewilder. The tricky word problem **baffled** Otto.

*bewilder* To puzzle and confuse; baffle. Venice often *bewilders* tourists who don't know their way around all the islands.

*confuse* To perplex; mix up. The poorly written directions for the game *confused* the players.

*daze* To confuse or bewilder; stun. Everything she saw in Wonderland *dazed* Alice.

*perplex* To cause to hesitate or doubt; confuse; bewilder; puzzle. The riddle *perplexed* everyone in the class.

*puzzle* To confuse or perplex; mystify. Sherlock Holmes had solved the mystery, but it still *puzzled* Dr. Watson.

**bargain** *n.* Something sold at a lower price than usual; a good buy. I picked up some great **bargains** at the store.

*buy* Something bought or about to be bought, especially a bargain. This is a *buy* you can't afford to pass up.

*discount* An amount subtracted from the

## beautiful

real cost. Our school gets a *discount* on books for the library.

*sale* A selling of goods at bargain prices. In August stores have summer clothing *sales*.

See also *swap*.

**beautiful** *adj.* Lovely; pretty; full of beauty. San Francisco is one of the most **beautiful** cities in the world.

*attractive* Attracting interest; tempting; pleasing. The movie had some very *attractive* stars in it.

*fair* Beautiful. The young child's face was so *fair* that many people paused to admire her picture.

*gorgeous* Brilliant; dazzling; very beautiful. The sunset at the beach was *gorgeous*.

*handsome* Pleasing in appearance, especially in a stately or manly way. The governor and her husband were a *handsome* couple.

*lovely* Beautiful. The city park had a *lovely* garden.

ANTONYMS: **homely, plain, ugly**

**bite** *v.* To cut with the teeth. Don't **bite** off more than you can chew.

*gnaw* To bite or eat away little by little with or as if with teeth. The puppy got into trouble for *gnawing* the shoe.

*nibble* To eat or bite in a quick, gentle way. Sue *nibbled* celery and carrot sticks until dinner was ready.

*snap* To try to bite. The dog *snapped* at the mosquitoes that buzzed by it.

**blend** *v.* To mix. I **blended** the yogurt and the grated cheese together to make a salad dressing.

*knead* To mix and press dough with your hands. You have to *knead* bread dough before you let it rise.

*mix* To combine or add so as to blend. I *mixed* the butter and eggs, but I left out the milk.

## bunch

*stir* To move around with a circular motion, as a fluid or group of dry particles, so as to mix thoroughly. I *stirred* the two colors together before I painted the floor.

*whip* To beat to a froth. *Whip* the egg whites before adding them to the batter.

ANTONYM: **separate**

**blunder** *n.* A stupid mistake. Spilling orange juice on the newspaper was my **blunder**.

*error* Something done, said, or believed incorrectly; a mistake. Thinking that the Earth was flat was a common *error* before Columbus's time.

*fumble* The act of handling or dropping clumsily. The football player's *fumble* caused the team to lose.

*mistake* An error or blunder. Barbara made three *mistakes* on the spelling test.

**boost** *v.* To push up or forward. Give me a **boost** up the tree.

*hoist* To raise or lift, especially by mechanical means. The builders *hoisted* the wood up to the roof.

*lift* To take hold of and raise to a higher position. My father *lifted* me up so I could see the parade.

*raise* To cause to move upward or to a higher level; lift. If you want to ask a question, *raise* your hand.

ANTONYMS: **drop, lower**

**bunch** *n.* A number of things of the same kind, growing or placed together. A **bunch** of grapes is always a good snack.

*class* A group of students who are taught together. We have some very bright students in our *class*.

*community* A group of people living together in one locality. Although people on farms may live miles from



# THESAURUS

## burden

- each other, they often form a close *community*.
- crowd* A large number of people gathered closely together. I sometimes get nervous in a *crowd*.
- flock* A large group of animals or birds; a large crowd of people. The man threw bread to the *flock* of pigeons.
- herd* A group of animals all of one kind. You can see *herds* of buffalo at a park in Oklahoma.
- burden** *n.* Something hard to carry or handle. Being part of a large family can be both a joy and a **burden**.
- difficulty* Something that is not easy to do, understand, or overcome; obstacle. Learning a new language can be a great *difficulty*.
- hardship* Something that is hard to endure. Spending a night in a tent is not a *hardship* for someone who enjoys camping.
- misfortune* Ill fortune; bad luck. It is a terrible *misfortune* to have your house burn down.
- trial* A cause of suffering, annoyance, or vexation. Illness can be a *trial* for the sick person's family.
- business** *n.* A job, profession, or trade. The computer **business** has prospered.
- career* A person's lifework; profession. My sister plans a *career* in law.
- job* A position or situation of employment. Jacob has a part-time *job* after school.
- occupation* Anything a person does, but especially what someone does for a living. Taking care of sick animals is an interesting *occupation*.
- profession* An occupation requiring a good education and mental rather than physical labor. Teaching is a noble *profession*.
- trade* A business or occupation, especially a specialized kind of work

## carve

with the hands that requires training. My uncle learned the plumbing *trade* after high school.

## C

- careless** *adj.* Reckless; done without care or effort. Randy's perfect composition showed that he is not a **careless** speller.
- reckless* Careless. *Reckless* driving is a major cause of accidents.
- wild* Not controlled or restrained, and often unruly or disorderly. The principal warned us not to be *wild* on the playground so no one would get hurt.
- ANTONYMS: **careful, cautious**
- carnival** *n.* A fair or festival with rides and games. Jack rode the roller coaster at the **carnival**.
- circus* A traveling show, as of acrobats, clowns, or trained animals. My favorite acts at the *circus* are the clowns.
- fair* An exhibition, as of goods, products, or machinery. Mike's pig won first prize at the state *fair* this year.
- festival* A particular feast, holiday, or celebration, especially an annual one. Every year thousands of people come to the music *festival* at the beach.
- carve** *v.* To shape wood, marble, etc., by cutting. Mount Rushmore was **carved** by Gutzon Borglum and his son.
- chisel* To cut or shape with or as if with a chisel. The artist *chiseled* a swan out of the block of ice.
- engrave* To carve or cut letters or designs into. My grandmother gave me a watch with my name *engraved* on the back.
- shape* To give a shape to; mold; form. Clay can be *shaped* into many different objects, such as bowls and pitchers.



## catch

**catch** *v.* To get hold of; to trap. Frogs **catch** flying insects with their long sticky tongues.  
**capture** To catch; to take prisoner. Maria was able to *capture* my queen after five minutes of chess.  
**grab** To grasp suddenly and forcefully; snatch. I *grabbed* the brass ring on the merry-go-round.  
**grasp** To take hold of firmly, as with the hand. I *grasped* the reins to control the horse.  
**seize** To take hold of suddenly and with force; grab; snatch. My brother *seized* my arm when the movie became scary.  
**snatch** To grab or take hold of suddenly, hastily, or eagerly. I *snatched* the pencil away from the baby before she could hurt herself.  
**ANTONYMS:** free, release

**change** *v.* To make or become different. The driver **changed** to a lower gear to go down the steep hill.  
**alter** To make or become different; change. My father had to *alter* all his clothes after he lost some weight.  
**correct** To change so as to make right; eliminate faults or errors from. I *corrected* my paper and handed it back to the teacher.  
**disguise** To change in appearance or manner so as not to be known or to appear as someone else. Huckleberry Finn *disguised* himself as a girl so that he wouldn't get caught.

**cheerful** *adj.* Happy; full of cheer. Our teacher greeted us with a **cheerful** "Good morning!"  
**bright** Full of gladness or hope. Andy's **bright** smile made us all feel better.  
**glad** Having a feeling of joy or pleasure. I was **glad** to be home after the long trip.  
**happy** Enjoying or showing pleasure;

## clever

joyous; contented. I am very *happy* to see you.  
**joyful** Glad; full of joy. Weddings are **joyful** occasions.  
**merry** Full of fun and laughter; joyous; gay; zestful. Everyone at the New Year's Eve party was singing, laughing, and feeling **merry**.  
**sunny** Bright; cheery. Mother's **sunny** greeting made all my friends feel at ease.  
**ANTONYMS:** gloomy, sad, sorrowful, unhappy  
**civil** *adj.* Polite. James was **civil** to Jane even though they didn't always agree.  
**courteous** Polite and considerate. The **courteous** sales clerk listened to the customer's complaint.  
**gallant** Courteous and respectful; chivalrous. The **gallant** young man helped the old woman cross the street.  
**polite** Showing consideration for others; mannerly. Being **polite** means remembering to say "please" and "thank you."  
**respectful** Courteous; full of respect. Most Asian societies are very **respectful** of old people.  
**ANTONYMS:** impolite, rude  
**clever** *adj.* Very smart; bright. The **clever** boy used a wagon to carry the packages.  
**alert** Mentally quick and intelligent. The teacher was pleased to be teaching an **alert** class this year.  
**cunning** Clever or tricky. **Cunning** Tom Sawyer got his friends to paint the fence for him.  
**intelligent** Having or showing intelligence; smart; bright. She was so **intelligent** that she went to college at age fifteen.  
**quick** Swift to learn, understand, or perceive; alert. The baby was **quick** to notice new things.

# THESAURUS

## comic

*sharp* Quick-witted, clever, shrewd. He has a *sharp* mind.

*smart* Quick in mind; intelligent; bright; clever. Some people think that pigs are as *smart* as dogs.

ANTONYMS: **simple, slow, stupid**

**comic** *adj.* Funny. Pearl made a **comic** face as she told her funny story.

*absurd* Unreasonable; ridiculous. My *absurd* Halloween costume was a ballet outfit with a gorilla mask.

*amusing* Causing amusement, fun, laughter, or merriment. The audience laughed during the *amusing* skit.

*funny* Amusing or comical. The circus clowns were very *funny*.

*humorous* Full of or using humor; funny; amusing. My father laughed at a *humorous* cartoon in the newspaper.

*ridiculous* Deserving ridicule or laughter because of its absurdity or silliness. The dog looked *ridiculous* wearing Mother's hat.

ANTONYMS: **serious, solemn**

**commerce** *n.* The exchange or buying and selling of goods, especially between nations; trade. Businesses were happy that the **commerce** between the countries had improved.

*industry* Manufacturing and business activity as a whole. The food *industry* plays an important role in America's economy.

*trade* The buying and selling of goods, at either wholesale or retail prices, within a country or between countries; commerce. Japan is one of America's most important partners in *trade*.

**conceal** *v.* To put out of sight; to hide. The lead actor **concealed** himself behind a couch for most of the first act.

*cover* To be put over or to put something

## crack

over. Geraldo *covered* the ugly tabletop with a tablecloth.

*disguise* To conceal or give a false idea of. Hank tried to *disguise* his new haircut by wearing a hat.

*hide* To put or keep out of sight; conceal. We all *hid* in the bedroom to surprise my mother.

*mask* To hide or conceal; disguise. Karen was very upset, but she *masked* her feelings until she got home.

ANTONYMS: **bare, betray, reveal, show, uncover**

**country** *n.* A nation. The **country** to the north of the United States is Canada.

*empire* A country reigned over by an emperor or empress. Rome was once the main city of an *empire*.

*kingdom* A country ruled by a king or queen. The queen called together all of the people in the *kingdom*.

*nation* Country. Our *nation* is the United States of America.

*state* A nation. The head of the *state* of Israel is called a prime minister.

**cozy** *adj.* Warm and comfortable. That chair by the fire is very **cozy**.

*comfortable* Giving comfort and satisfaction. A good tent is *comfortable* in all kinds of weather.

*homey* Homelike. The friendly people made the country inn seem *homey*.

*restful* Full of or giving rest. A hot bath is very *restful* after a day of skiing.

*snug* Closely but comfortably covered or sheltered; cozy. The *snug* snowsuit kept the child warm and dry.

ANTONYM: **uncomfortable**

**crack** *n.* A narrow break. The car window had a long **crack** where the stone had hit it.

*break* A gap, crack, or broken place. My bicycle tire caught in the *break* in the crumbling sidewalk.



## customer

*fracture* A crack, break, or rupture. The doctor said the bone *fracture* in my arm would heal quickly.

*gap* A crack or opening, as in a wall. The hikers made their way through a *gap* between the rocks.

**customer** *n.* A buyer of goods or services. Some store owners say that the **customer** is always right.

*buyer* A person who buys. The dealer is offering a discount to every car *buyer*.

*consumer* A person who uses goods and services. We are all *consumers* of electricity.

*shopper* A person who visits shops or stores to purchase or look at goods. The stores are filled with *shoppers* before holidays.

*user* A person or thing that consumes or spends. Airplanes are among the largest *users* of fuel.

ANTONYMS: merchant, provider, salesperson, seller

## D

**damage** *v.* To do or cause harm. The hail **damaged** the paint on the car.

*destroy* To ruin completely; wreck; smash. The high waves pounded the shore and *destroyed* the dock.

*harm* To do harm to. The early frost *harmed* the tomato plants.

*ruin* To destroy, demolish, or damage. The cat pulled down the bird feeder and *ruined* it.

*shatter* To break into pieces; to damage; demolish; ruin. The vase *shattered* when I dropped it.

*spoil* To lessen the quality, value, or usefulness of; damage or destroy. The rain *spoiled* our weekend at the beach.

*wreck* To destroy. Dropping the model airplane *wrecked* it completely.

## dim

ANTONYMS: fix, improve, repair

**danger** *n.* Something that can hurt or cause damage. The hole in the floor was a **danger** to everyone.

*peril* Danger; risk. Drivers who drink are a *peril* to other people.

*risk* A chance of meeting with harm or loss; hazard. Flying an airplane is a job that has many *risks*.

*threat* A warning that something will be done to hurt or punish. The heavy rains made us face the *threat* of a flood.

**defeat** *v.* To beat an enemy or opponent. The American colonists **defeated** the British in the Revolutionary War.

*beat* To defeat, as in a fight or contest. I finally *beat* Dad at chess.

*conquer* To defeat or win control of by use of force, as in war. The Greeks *conquered* the Trojans by hiding in a large, wooden horse.

*triumph* To win a victory; be successful. Even though he was slower, the tortoise *triumphed* over the hare in a race.

ANTONYMS: fall, lose, surrender

**desire** *v.* To wish; to want. Many people **desire** fame and fortune.

*long* To want greatly; yearn. The girl *longed* for a pet of her own.

*want* To feel a desire or wish for. Freddie *wanted* to go home from summer camp.

*wish* To want, desire, or be glad to have. I *wish* I could be a scientist when I grow up.

ANTONYMS: refuse, reject

**dim** *adj.* Not bright; not clearly seen. Because the sun is very bright, other stars look **dim** from Earth.

*dull* Not bright or clear. The whole world can look *dull* on a cloudy day.

*faint* Weak, slight, or dim. A *faint* light



## direction

flashed on the other side of the bay—the signal we had been waiting for!  
*gloomy* Dull; dark. The sky looked *gloomy* on the morning of our fishing trip.

*soft* Not glaring, bright, or harsh. The *soft* lighting in the room was pleasant.

*vague* Not definite, clear, precise, or distinct. Tom saw a *vague* form moving through the fog.

ANTONYMS: **bright, clear, definite, distinct, glaring, harsh**

**direction** *n.* The line along which anything moves, faces, or lies. The storm was traveling in an easterly **direction**.

*circuit* A route that returns to where it began. The actors in the national touring group traveled in a *circuit* around the country.

*course* Something, as a path or ground, passed over; line of motion; direction. The explorers' *course* took them over three mountain ranges.

*path* A track or course along which a thing moves. The *path* of the comet passed near Earth.

*route* A road or course taken in traveling from one point to another. Many birds and animals migrate along the same *routes* year after year.

*track* Any regular path or course. The runners followed the leader's *track*.

**disagree** *v.* To fail to agree; to argue. People often write letters to newspapers when they **disagree** with the editors.

*argue* To disagree. My brother and my sister *argued* about whose turn it was to wash the pots.

*debate* To give reasons for or against; to argue; to consider. We *debated* over which movie to see.

ANTONYM: **agree**

## drift

**discussion** *n.* The act of discussing; an exchange of ideas. The class had a **discussion** about nuclear energy.

*argument* The act of arguing; quarrel. The hockey players were thrown out of the game because of their *argument*.

*conversation* An exchange of ideas by formal talk; talk. During my phone *conversation* with Grandmother, I told her I got an A on a math test.

*debate* The act of debating. The college held a *debate* between the candidates for governor.

*dialogue* Conversation involving two or more speakers, as in a book or play. Two actors in the play spoke so softly that I could not hear their *dialogue*.

**doubt** *v.* To be unsure or uncertain.

I **doubt** that we are on the right road.

*distrust* To feel no trust for; suspect.

I *distrust* people who say they can make you rich overnight.

*suspect* To have doubts about; mistrust. The detective *suspected* the butler's motive.

*wonder* To be doubtful or curious about something; want to know. I *wonder* if it will really snow tomorrow.

ANTONYMS: **accept, trust**

**draw** *v.* To make a picture with a pencil or crayon. Jerry can **draw** beautiful pictures of horses.

*design* To work out and draw plans or sketches for. My mother *designs* buildings for her company.

*draft* To make a plan, outline, or rough copy of. I *drafted* a plan for a model sailboat.

*sketch* To make a rough drawing. The artist made a *sketch* of the Eiffel Tower before she painted it.

**drift** *v.* To move or float along in water or air. The empty rowboat **drifted** away from the bank of the creek.

## endless

*float* To be carried along gently on the surface of a liquid or through the air; drift. The sound of distant music *floated* to us on the breeze.

*flow* To move steadily and freely. The rafts *flowed* down the river with the current.

*paddle* To move your hands and feet in water. The child *paddled* across the pool to his father's arms.

*sail* To travel over water in a ship or boat. It's my dream to *sail* across the Pacific Ocean.

*swim* To move through the water by using the arms, legs, fins, or the like. Ducks can fly, walk on land, and *swim*.

ANTONYM: **sink**

## E

**endless** *adj.* Having no end; lasting or going on without stopping. The boring play seemed **endless**.

*constant* Happening over and over; endless; continual. My sleep was disturbed by the dog's *constant* barking.

*continual* Going on without a pause; continuous. The weather report calls for *continual* showers all weekend.

*continuous* Going on without any pause or interruption. The theater was offering *continuous* showings of old movies.

*countless* Too many to be counted. On a clear night, you can see *countless* stars in the sky.

*eternal* Seeming to last forever; continual. Although the tornado passed in just a few minutes, the time waiting for it to end seemed *eternal*.

ANTONYMS: **ending, finishing, stopping**

**enjoyable** *adj.* Pleasant; satisfying. We had an **enjoyable** visit with our

## explorer

grandmother and our grandfather during the summer.

*agreeable* Giving pleasure; pleasing.

Reading a good book is an *agreeable* way to spend a rainy day.

*delightful* Giving joy or pleasure. The evening breeze was *delightful* after the hot afternoon.

*pleasant* Giving pleasure; pleasing. The view from our room at the lodge was *pleasant*.

ANTONYMS: **bitter, harsh, painful, unpleasant**

**even** *adj.* On the same level; equal. My brother and I do an **even** amount of work around the house.

*balanced* Brought into or kept in a condition of equality, as between opposing forces, amounts, or values. It is important to eat a *balanced* diet.

*equal* The same in size, amount, or value. Two times six is *equal* to three times four.

*fair* Not favoring one above another; just. Each player received a *fair* share of playing pieces.

*level* Equal in height; even. The tabletop was *level* with the windowsill.

See also **smooth**.

ANTONYMS: **unbalanced, unequal, uneven, unfair**

**explorer** *n.* A person who seeks to learn or discover something. Many **explorers** in medicine are seeking cures for deadly diseases.

*adventurer* A person who looks for or takes part in adventures. Robert Peary, a famous *adventurer*, was the first person to reach the North Pole.

*astronaut* A person who travels in space. The *astronaut* Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon.

*navigator* A person who navigates. English *navigator* Sir Francis Drake traveled around the entire globe.



# THESAURUS

## faithful

*scout* A soldier, plane, or ship sent out to observe and get information about the enemy. In the movie, the *scout* told the general that the enemy was ready to attack.

*voyager* A person who takes any journey, as one through air or space. Jules Verne wrote stories about *voyagers* who went under the sea, around the world, and to other planets.

## F

**faithful** *adj.* Loyal; true. You can count on your real friends to be always **faithful** to you.

*constant* Faithful; true. Old Yeller was the boy's *constant* companion.

*dependable* Worthy of trust; reliable. Employers like to hire *dependable* workers.

*loyal* True; faithful. My father has been a *loyal* employee of his company for 30 years.

*reliable* Dependable; trustworthy. The man read a *reliable* newspaper for details about the President's meeting.

*true* Faithful, as to promises or principles; loyal; steadfast. The loyal dog is *true* to its owner.

*trustworthy* Worthy of confidence; reliable. The ship's *trustworthy* captain was an experienced sailor.

ANTONYMS: **disloyal, undependable, unfaithful, untrue**

**fashion** *n.* Way; manner. I like to do things in my own **fashion**.

*convention* The established way of doing things; accepted custom. Some people do not worry about following the *conventions* of modern clothing style.

*custom* A usual way of acting or doing something; habit. Our family's *custom* is to exchange gifts on New Year's Eve.

## fearless

*manner* A way of doing, being done, or occurring. Peter holds his pen in a strange *manner*, but you can still read what he writes.

*method* A way of doing or accomplishing something. Researchers have discovered a new *method* of giving people certain kinds of medicine.

*way* A manner or method. There's more than one *way* to do most things.

**fasten** *v.* To attach. The driver asked us to **fasten** our seat belts when we got in the car.

*anchor* To keep in place with an anchor. The captain *anchored* the boat in the harbor for the night.

*attach* To make fast; fasten; connect. Connie *attached* a note to her report explaining why it was late.

*bind* To tie or fasten, as with a band or cord. We *bound* the newspapers to bring to the recycling plant.

*join* To bring or come together; to connect. The electrician *joined* two wires at the light switch.

*knot* To tie in a knot. Marcus *knotted* the two short ropes together to make one long one.

*secure* To fasten; make firm. We *secured* the window shutters before the hurricane struck.

ANTONYMS: **release, unfasten**

**fearless** *adj.* Brave; without fear. The **fearless** stunt man jumped from the bridge into the river.

*bold* Having or requiring courage; daring. It takes a *bold* person to jump from an airplane with a parachute.

*brave* Having or showing courage; not afraid. The *brave* firefighter rescued the baby from the burning house.

*courageous* Having or showing courage. Sometimes, people who seem shy turn out to be *courageous* when their help is needed in emergencies.



## fly

*daring* Brave and adventurous; fearless.

The *daring* rock climber reached the top of the slippery cliff.

*gallant* Bold and courageous; brave.

Many legends tell of *gallant* knights rescuing people in danger.

ANTONYMS: **afraid, alarmed, fearful, frightened, scared**

**fly** *v.* To go through the air. Carmel seemed to **fly** as she did her tumbling stunts.

*flutter* To flap the wings without really flying; fly clumsily. The moth *fluttered* across the yard.

*glide* To move in a downward slant without using power, as an airplane. The model airplane *glided* softly to the ground.

*hover* To remain in or near one place in the air, as birds do. The hummingbird flaps its wings so quickly that it can *hover* above a flower.

*sail* To move, glide, or float in the air. Hundreds of balloons *sailed* into the air at the end of the festival.

*soar* To rise high into the air; fly high. The space shuttle *soared* into the sky early this morning.

**force** *n.* Power; strength. The **force** of the water broke the dam.

*energy* Lively force or activity; vigor; vitality. I don't have much *energy* after a large meal.

*might* Great power; force; strength. Davy Crockett fought with all his *might* at the Alamo.

*power* Physical strength or force. A rocket needs *power* to escape from the Earth's gravity.

*strength* The quality of being strong; force or power, especially of the muscles. Hercules could wrestle a lion because of his great *strength*.

*vigor* Active strength or force of mind or body; healthy energy. My grandfather

## goal

has enough *vigor* to ride a bicycle an hour a day.

ANTONYM: **weakness**

**forceful** *adj.* Strong; energetic. That actor always plays **forceful** characters who get what they want.

*intense* Very strong, great, or deep. Peg was in *intense* pain before she had the operation.

*powerful* Strong; full of power. The boxer has a *powerful* punch.

*strong* Powerful or forceful. I'm not *strong* enough to lift this box myself.

ANTONYMS: **feeble, frail, weak**

**fortune** *n.* What is going to happen to a person; luck or chance. It was Max's good **fortune** to run out of gas near a gas station.

*chance* The unknown cause of the way things often turn out; fate; luck. Just by *chance*, his bus came as he arrived at the bus stop.

*fate* What happens to a person; fortune; lot. The *fate* of the boy's balloon depended on the wind currents.

*lot* A person's portion in life, ascribed to chance or fate. Ellen decided to improve her *lot* by taking college classes at night.

*luck* Something that happens by chance; fortune. I've had the good *luck* of meeting the President twice.

## G

**goal** *n.* Aim. Charles Dickens's **goal** as a writer was to entertain people.

*aim* A purpose or goal. Helping other people is a noble *aim*.

*ambition* Something eagerly desired to be achieved. Reading about other people can help you choose an *ambition* for yourself.

*end* Aim; purpose. Doing a good job can be an *end* in itself.

# THESAURUS

## grab

**intent** Purpose, aim, or intention. My only *intent* was to pass the test by studying hard.

**purpose** What one intends or wants to accomplish; aim. Jane Addams opened Hull House for the *purpose* of helping the poor.

**target** Something that is aimed or shot at. An advertisement's *target* is to get you to do or buy something.

**grab** *v.* To take hold of suddenly. I *grabbed* the small tree to keep from sliding down the cliff.

**clutch** To grasp and hold firmly. The child *clutched* the puppy to his chest.

**grasp** To take hold of firmly, as with the hand. Matthew *grasped* his little brother's hand as they crossed the street.

**grip** To grasp or hold on firmly. Few people can *grip* a basketball with only one hand.

**seize** To take hold of suddenly and with force; grab; snatch. Robin Hood *seized* the bag of money and rode off through the woods.

**snatch** To grab and take hold of suddenly, hastily, or eagerly. The dog *snatched* the sandwich right out of my hand.

See also **catch**.

**guard** *v.* To watch over or protect. The large dog *guarded* the baby while she slept in the carriage.

**defend** To protect. Police officers *defend* the community.

**escort** To accompany as an escort. Secret service agents *escort* the President wherever he goes.

**protect** To shield or defend from attack, harm, or injury; guard; shelter. Safe bicycle riders wear helmets to *protect* their heads.

**shelter** To protect; to give shelter to. A cave *sheltered* the skiers in the storm.

**shield** To protect or guard. An apron

## hesitate

*shields* your clothes from stains while you are cooking.

## H

**happiness** *n.* The feeling of gladness or joy. It gives me great *happiness* to see you again.

**bliss** Great happiness or joy. You could see the *bliss* on the young couple's faces as they looked at their baby.

**delight** Great pleasure or joy. It's a *delight* to spend a winter evening with hot food, a roaring fire, and people you like.

**joy** A strong feeling of happiness, contentment, or satisfaction. My mother's *joy* was obvious as she hugged my brother and me.

ANTONYMS: **grief, sadness, sorrow, trouble**

**haul** *v.* To pull or drag with force. The car *hailed* a small trailer behind it.

**drag** To haul or pull along. The little boy *dragged* his stuffed bear behind him.

**draw** To pull; drag. The settlers used horses and mules to *draw* logs to build their houses.

**tow** To pull or drag by a rope or chain. The motorboat *towed* a water skier over the lake.

**helpless** *adj.* Unable to help oneself. Most animals are completely *helpless* when they are born.

**delicate** Weak or easily injured. A fawn is a *delicate* animal.

**feeble** Lacking strength; weak. I felt *feeble* after being sick for a week.

**frail** Easily damaged in body or structure; weak. The injured bird looked very *frail*.

**weak** Lacking in strength or effectiveness. The small child was too *weak* to throw the ball very far.

**hesitate** *v.* To feel doubtful; to pause.



## highway

Don't **hesitate** to call if you need help fixing your bicycle.

**delay** To go slow; linger. The fire engines didn't **delay** in getting to the burning hotel.

**pause** To stop temporarily. The speaker **paused** to take a drink of water.

**wait** To remain or stay until something happens. I've been **waiting** for the bus for 40 minutes.

ANTONYMS: **continue, proceed**

**highway** *n.* A main road. An accident slowed up traffic on the **highway**.

**expressway** A highway designed for rapid travel. Ed traveled to the city in 30 minutes on the **expressway**.

**route** A road or course taken in traveling from one point to another. The Alaska Highway is the only land **route** to Alaska.

**turnpike** A highway on which you must pay a toll. We drove to Delaware on the New Jersey **Turnpike**.

**hinder** *v.* To interfere with; to block.

Construction work **hindered** everyone who entered the building.

**block** To be in the way of. A fallen tree **blocked** the road.

**delay** To make late. Bad weather **delayed** Tex's flight.

**interrupt** To cause someone to stop doing something. It is impolite to **interrupt** people while they are talking.

**limit** To restrict; to set a limit to. Strict laws **limit** how fast you can drive.

**meddle** To interfere with something that is not your business. I never **meddle** in the problems of other people.

ANTONYMS: **aid, assist, ease, help**

**honest** *adj.* Truthful; fair. The **honest** girl pointed out she hadn't been charged for the sandwich she had eaten.

**fair** Following the right rules; honest. **Fair** play is important in all games.

## idea

**frank** Completely honest in saying or showing what one really thinks or feels. It is easy to be **frank** with someone you really trust.

**honorable** Fair; honest; upright.

Admitting that you were wrong was the **honorable** thing to do.

**truthful** Honest. You must be **truthful** when you speak in court.

ANTONYMS: **crooked, dishonest**

**honor** *v.* To give or show respect and admiration for. We **honor** Abraham Lincoln and George Washington on President's Day each year.

**celebrate** To observe or honor in a special manner. Americans **celebrate**

Independence Day with fireworks.

**keep** To be faithful to, observe, or fulfill.

We **keep** Thanksgiving by having special dinners with our families.

**observe** To celebrate in the proper way, as a holiday. Different cultures around the world **observe** different holidays.

**horror** *n.* The feeling of dread or great fear. The witnesses watched with **horror** as the forest burned.

**dread** Great fear or uneasiness, especially over something in the future. Some people feel **dread** about going to see the dentist.

**fright** Sudden, violent alarm or fear. I always feel **fright** when I look down from a high window.

**panic** Sudden, overwhelming fear, often affecting many people at once. **Panic** struck everyone when the alarm rang.

**terror** Great fear; extreme fright or dread. Sharks can cause **terror** in anyone.

**idea** *n.* A thought or opinion. Does anyone in the class have any **ideas** about what the poem means?



## increase

*belief* Something believed. Most societies share a *belief* in the value of life.

*feeling* An opinion. What is your *feeling* about working after school?

*notion* An opinion or belief. Mother had a *notion* that we might find you here.

*opinion* Something a person believes to be true but is not absolutely certain of. Good newspaper reporters keep their own *opinions* out of the news stories they write.

*thought* The result of thinking; idea or judgment. I am interested in hearing your *thoughts* on the subject.

*view* An opinion or judgment. In many people's *view*, the automobile is the best way to travel.

**increase** *v.* To make or become greater or larger. George slowly **increased** the number of sit-ups he did daily.

*enlarge* To make or become larger; to expand. The teacher *enlarged* the map in the book when he drew it on the chalkboard.

*extend* To increase in time or space. The dining table *extends* to make room for 14 people.

*inflate* To increase or expand a great deal. A balloon can *inflate* to many times its original size.

*magnify* To make something look bigger than its real size. My glasses *magnify* the words in a book.

*swell* To get bigger. My ankle *swelled* after I twisted it.

ANTONYMS: contract, decrease, reduce, shrink

## J

**joke** *n.* Something that makes you laugh. My grandmother tied a ripe tomato to a young tomato plant to play a **joke** on my sister and me.

## loud

*jest* A statement or action intended to cause laughter; a joke. When we didn't laugh, Frank tried to explain that his remark was really a *jest*.

*mischief* Pranks. The kitten's latest *mischief* was climbing up the curtains.

*prank* A mischievous, playful act or trick. I laughed even though I was the victim of the *prank*.

*trick* Something done to fool or cheat. April Fool's Day is a day to play harmless *tricks* on people.

## L

**leader** *n.* A person who leads or directs. In the game "Follow the **Leader**" everyone does what the first person does.

*boss* A person who employs or is in charge of workers. My mother's secretary says she is a good *boss*.

*captain* A person in command; a leader. Theodore Roosevelt was *captain* of the Rough Riders in the Spanish-American War.

*general* A high officer in an army. Ulysses S. Grant and Robert E. Lee were opposing *generals* in the Civil War.

*guide* A person who conducts or leads others, as on a trip or tour. My brother is a *guide* on raft trips.

*officer* In the armed forces, a person who has the rank to command others. The Admiral of the Fleet is the highest *officer* in the United States Navy.

*official* A person who holds an office or job and has certain duties or powers. The mayor is an *official* of a city government.

ANTONYM: follower

**loud** *adj.* Not quiet; noisy. My uncle has a **loud** voice.

*deafening* Confusing or overwhelming

## major

with noise. The whine of the chain saws was *deafening*.  
*noisy* Making a loud noise. Our neighbor's *noisy* dog barks at every car that goes by.  
*shrill* Having or making a high-pitched, piercing sound. The bird's *shrill* whistle warned of a nearby cat.  
*thunderous* Of or like thunder. The drum's *thunderous* beat drowned out some of the other instruments.  
 ANTONYMS: quiet, silent, still

## M

*major* *adj.* Important; greater or larger. Opposition to the extension of slavery was a *major* cause of the Civil War.  
*basic* Forming the basis or most important part. Flour is the *basic* ingredient in bread.  
*central* Most important; principal; chief. The *central* actors didn't appear for the movie's opening.  
*chief* Most significant or important; principal. The *chief* crop of Iowa is corn.  
*important* Having much significance, value, or influence. Benjamin Franklin was an *important* figure in American history.  
*main* First or chief, as in size, rank, or importance. Paul and Maureen are the *main* characters in the book *Misty of Chincoteague*.  
*meaningful* Full of meaning; important. Independence Day is a *meaningful* holiday for Americans.  
*principal* Most important. The *principal* reason for the meeting was to elect a president.  
 ANTONYMS: minor, small, unimportant  
*mislead* *v.* To cause someone to believe something that is not true. I was *misled* by incorrect information.

## nervous

*deceive* To cause to take as true something that is not true; fool or mislead, as by lying. Don't let false advertising *deceive* you.  
*fool* To make a fool of; deceive. Peggy and Angela *fooled* me into thinking they were sisters.  
*outwit* To get the better of by being smarter or more clever. My little sister got me to do the dishes by *outwitting* me.  
*trick* To fool or cheat. My brother *tricked* me into going to school on a holiday.  
*move* *v.* To go or make go from one place to another. The traffic *moved* slowly down the street.  
*climb* To go up. Few people have *climbed* to the top of Mount Everest.  
*dance* To move in time, usually to music. The couples *danced* while the band played.  
*motion* To signal; to make a movement that shows meaning. Mother *motioned* to the waiter to bring us our check.  
*sweep* To move, go, or pass swiftly or with force. The raging river *swept* through the valley after overflowing its banks.  
*trot* To move at a trot. The dog *trotted* behind its owner.

## N

*nervous* *adj.* Tense; uneasy. The students were *nervous* during the test.  
*anxious* Worried; uneasy. The mother was *anxious* for her children's safety.  
*jumpy* Nervous; uneasy. The *jumpy* guard called out, "Who's there?"  
*restless* Unable to rest or be still; nervous; uneasy. The *restless* tiger paced up and down.  
*tense* Nervous; strained. The score was tied and the game *tense* when the home team's star player came to bat.



# THESAURUS

## notice

*uneasy* Restless or nervous. The boy was *uneasy* as he stepped into the empty house.

ANTONYMS: calm, relaxed, undisturbed

**notice** *v.* To see; to pay attention to. I **noticed** that he was wearing a red jacket.

*note* To pay careful attention to. Be sure to *note* how the pieces go together.

*observe* To see or notice. The scientist *observed* that the mold was changing.

*regard* To look at closely or attentively. The sergeant *regarded* the soldier's dirty uniform with scorn.

*stare* To look steadily for some time, with the eyes wide open, as from surprise, curiosity, wonder, or bad manners. We all *stared* at the clown as he walked on his hands.

ANTONYMS: ignore, miss, neglect, overlook



**occupy** *v.* To live in. Nobody has **occupied** this house in a long time.

*dwell* To live or make your home. Bears  *dwell* in dens.

*live* To reside. Marcel *lives* in Lyons, a city in France.

*lodge* To live temporarily, especially as a paying guest. That man *lodges* at my cousin's house.

**overlook** *v.* To fail to see. I **overlooked** a spelling mistake in my research paper.

*excuse* To understand and overlook. Lee's parents *excused* his falling asleep at the dinner table.

*ignore* To refuse to notice; pay no attention to. Everyone *ignored* the child's whining.

*miss* To fail to see, hear, notice, or understand. I *missed* the article about you in the paper.

## particular

*neglect* To pay no attention to; ignore. If you *neglect* the plants in the garden, they will die.

ANTONYMS: note, notice, observe



**paper** *n.* Paper with writing on it. I handed in my **paper** on the results of our science experiment.

*article* A factual piece of writing on one topic, in a magazine, newspaper, or book. This magazine has an *article* about Henry Ford's first automobile.

*composition* A short essay, especially one written as an exercise for school. Dionne's *composition* was about Amelia Earhart.

*essay* A short composition, in which the writer gives his or her own ideas on a single subject. My *essay* on the importance of knowing how to do arithmetic won the school writing contest.

*report* An accounting or telling of something, often formal or in writing. Justin wrote a *report* on how Galileo developed the telescope.

**parcel** *n.* Something wrapped; a package. I received a **parcel** in the mail today.

*bundle* A package or parcel. My father took a *bundle* of laundry to the cleaners today.

*package* Something packed, wrapped up, or tied together. I would like a small *package* of raisins.

**particular** *adj.* Unusual; special. Most artists have a **particular** talent.

*individual* Characteristic of a certain person, animal, or thing. Whales have *individual* markings that allow people to tell them apart.

*rare* Not often seen or found; unusual. Wolves have become very *rare* in most parts of the United States.



## pasture

*special* Out of the ordinary. Going to the ballet was a *special* treat for me.

*unusual* Not usual or ordinary; uncommon. Australia has many *unusual* animals.

ANTONYMS: **average, common, normal, ordinary, usual**

**pasture** *n.* A grassy field where cattle, sheep, and horses graze. The sheep all ran to the other end of the **pasture**.

*field* A large stretch of land with few or no trees, especially one set aside for crops or as a pasture. Farmers cut *fields* of hay by hand long ago.

*meadow* A tract of land where grass is grown for hay or for grazing. The horse and her colt trotted across the green *meadow*.

*plain* An expanse of almost level, nearly treeless land; prairie. American Indians who lived on the *plains* hunted buffalo for food and clothing.

*prairie* A large tract or area of more or less level, grassy land having few or no trees, especially the broad, grassy plain of central North America. Many wagon trains crossed the wide, empty *prairie* on the way to Oregon.

*range* A wide, grassy plain for roaming and grazing. Prairie dogs, hares, and many other small animals live on the *range*.

*tundra* A large, almost flat plain of the arctic regions, with no trees. A herd of reindeer roamed across the *tundra* for as far as the eye could see.

**preserve** *v.* To prepare food so it can be kept without spoiling. We **preserved** peaches in canning jars this weekend.

*can* To put in sealed cans or jars; preserve, as fruit. It's too hot to *can* vegetables today.

*cure* To preserve (meat), as by salting, smoking, or drying. A common way to preserve fresh ham is to *cure* it.

## proper

*pickle* To preserve or flavor in pickle. We *pickled* the ripe cucumbers from our garden.

*salt* To cure or preserve with salt. Before ice boxes were invented, people *salted* their meats.

*smoke* To cure or preserve (food) by treating it with smoke. We *smoked* all the salmon that we caught on our fishing trip.

**prize** *n.* Something won in a contest or game. Aunt Jean's quilt won a **prize** at the county fair.

*award* A prize. The teacher gave Raoul an *award* for being the best speller in the class.

*medal* A small piece of metal, sometimes attached to a ribbon, with a picture or writing on it. The mayor gave Soo Lee a *medal* for saving the drowning infant.

*reward* Money, praise, etc., given or received for working hard or doing something special. The woman gave Nat a *reward* for returning her lost wallet.

**promise** *v.* To give a promise. Hector **promised** Randy that he would keep his secret.

*assure* To convince or promise. I *assure* you that I'll be back in time for your birthday party.

*pledge* To promise to give. We *pledge* allegiance to the flag every morning at school.

*swear* To promise or cause to promise solemnly. Witnesses in court must *swear* to tell the truth.

*vow* To make a vow. My parents *vowed* to love each other when they were married.

**proper** *adj.* Correct for a certain occasion or situation. It is **proper** to stand when the guest of honor arrives.

## pupil

*appropriate* Suitable; fitting. Jeans are not *appropriate* for dress-up parties.  
*correct* Proper. People with good manners always know the *correct* thing to do or to say.

*decent* Proper; respectable. Please wear a *decent* jacket when we go out to dinner.

*fitting* Suitable; proper. Rude language is never *fitting*.

*suitable* Proper for the purpose or occasion; fitting. Light clothes are most *suitable* for hot weather.

ANTONYMS: **improper, indecent, unsuitable**

**pupil** *n.* A student. A tutor often teaches only one or two **pupils**.

*apprentice* A person who works for another in order to learn a trade or business; any learner or beginner. Johnny was an *apprentice* to a blacksmith.

*scholar* A school pupil or student. A cap and gown used to be the mark of a *scholar*.

*student* A person who studies, especially in a school or college. There are 23 *students* in my class.



**question** *v.* To ask questions. We **questioned** the teacher about the science experiment.

*challenge* To question or dispute the truth or correctness of. The senator *challenged* his opponent's statement that there were no toxic waste dumps in the state.

*contest* To question or challenge. Amy *contested* the umpire's call.

*examine* To ask questions of in order to get information or to test a person's knowledge or skill. The lawyer

## regard

*examined* the witness for facts about the accident.

*inquire* To ask a question in order to get information. I forgot to *inquire* about the time the program starts.

*quiz* To examine by asking questions. The teacher *quizzed* the class after the geography lesson.

ANTONYMS: **answer, reply, respond**

**quiet** *adj.* Not busy; relaxed. I spent a **quiet** evening at home.

*calm* Quiet; peaceful; still. The air at the beach was *calm*.

*peaceful* Calm; quiet, full of peace. Lions are very *peaceful* after a large meal.

*restful* Quiet; serene. Our vacation at the lake was very *restful*.

See also **silent**.

ANTONYMS: **busy, nervous, noisy**

## R

**reason** *n.* Explanation; excuse. The **reason** the moon shines at night is that it reflects sunlight.

*argument* The reason or reasons for or against something. A longer life span is a good *argument* for exercise and proper nutrition.

*excuse* A reason given to explain or justify. I have an *excuse* for missing school yesterday.

*explanation* A reason that explains. Science has provided *explanations* for many strange things.

*ground (often pl.)* A basic cause, reason, or justification. The people agreed to restrict building on the *grounds* that the town was becoming too crowded.

*proof* Facts that prove something is true or false. People used to believe the Earth was flat, even though they had no *proof*.

**regard** *v.* To show thoughtfulness toward; to respect. I always **regard** other



## repair

people's feelings and opinions.  
*admire* To regard or look upon with wonder, pleasure, and approval. I *admire* people who help those who don't have enough to eat.  
*honor* To show or give respect and recognition. On Memorial Day we *honor* the people who died for our country.  
*respect* To have or show high regard for; esteem; honor. People whisper in libraries to show that they *respect* the rights of others who are reading there.  
*value* To regard highly; prize. We all *value* your friendship.  
 See also **notice**.  
**repair** *v.* To fix or mend. Our car's dented fender is being **repaired**.  
*fix* To restore to good condition; repair. Do you know how to *fix* a broken watch band?  
*mend* To repair. I *mended* the hole in my jacket.  
*patch* To repair or cover with a patch or patches. My sister helped me *patch* the tire on my bike.  
*restore* To bring back to a former or original condition. The landlord *restored* the front of our building.  
 ANTONYMS: **break, damage, destroy, wreck**  
**reply** *v.* To give an answer. The invitation asked us to **reply** as soon as possible.  
*answer* To reply or respond to. Who would like to *answer* the question?  
*respond* To give an answer or reply. The candidate did not *respond* to the critical editorial in the newspaper.  
*return* To answer; respond. "That's not what you said before," he *returned*.  
 ANTONYMS: **inquire, question, request**  
**reveal** *v.* To make known; to make visible. The last page of the magazine **reveals** the answer to the puzzle.

## ruler

*bare* To make bare; uncover. I *bared* all my fears to my best friend.  
*betray* To give away; disclose. Chung didn't want to speak to Cathy again after she *betrayed* his secret.  
*show* To cause or allow to see or be seen. The map *showed* where the treasure was buried.  
*uncover* To reveal. Nancy Drew *uncovered* the answer to the mystery.  
 ANTONYMS: **conceal, cover, disguise, hide**  
**rigid** *adj.* Stiff; unbending. The cast kept his broken finger **rigid**.  
*firm* That does not readily give in to touch or pressure. I like sleeping on a *firm* mattress.  
*fixed* Firm; steady. A *fixed* mast was in the center of the boat.  
*hard* Solid and firm; not easily dented or broken. The stale bread had a *hard* crust.  
*stiff* Not easy to bend; not flexible; rigid. After exercising, cool down to keep your muscles from getting *stiff*.  
*tense* Stretched tight; stiff. The student's neck and shoulders were *tense* from long hours of study.  
 ANTONYMS: **loose, relaxed, slack**  
**ruler** *n.* A person who rules or governs, as a king or queen. King John was the **ruler** who signed the Magna Carta.  
*emperor* The ruler of an empire. In the past, some European nations were ruled by *emperors*.  
*governor* The chief elected official of a state. The *governor* signed a letter praising education in this state.  
*monarch* A ruler, as a king or queen. Although Great Britain has a prime minister, the queen is considered its *monarch*.  
*tyrant* An all-powerful ruler. Most *tyrants* do not treat their country's citizens kindly.



# THESAURUS

## sadness

### S

**sadness** *n.* The condition of being sad.

The boy felt great **sadness** over his lost dog.

**grief** Deep sorrow or mental distress.

Charlie shared Jiro's **grief** when their friend moved.

**sorrow** Great sadness or grief. The day Pearl Harbor was attacked was a day of **sorrow**.

**trouble** Distress, difficulty, worry, or suffering. Ellen's **trouble** started when her alarm didn't ring.

ANTONYMS: **cheerfulness, delight, happiness, joy**

**serious** *adj.* Thoughtful; grave. We discussed the **serious** problem of air pollution in our cities.

**grave** Very important; serious. I made a **grave** mistake by not studying for the test.

**sober** Solemn; grave. The jury looked very **sober** when they came back into court.

**solemn** Serious, grave, and earnest. Elected officials take a **solemn** oath. **thoughtful** Full of thought. We spent a **thoughtful** moment in silence.

ANTONYMS: **light, minor, unimportant**

**settler** *n.* A person who settles or makes a home in a new country or colony. Many **settlers** in Minnesota came from northern Europe.

**colonist** A settler or founder of a colony. Some American **colonists** did not want the British government to rule them.

**immigrant** A person who comes into a country or region where he or she was not born, in order to live there. During the 1800's, many **immigrants** from Europe came to live in the United States.

**pioneer** A person who is the first to settle

## shock

a new region. Lewis and Clark helped open the West to the **pioneers**.

**shake** *v.* To tremble. The building **shook** during the earthquake.

**quake** To shake or tremble, often with great force. The ground **quaked** as the plane flew over it.

**quiver** To make a slight trembling motion; vibrate. The frightened duckling **quivered** in my hand.

**shiver** To tremble, as with cold or fear; shake; quiver. I began to **shiver** as soon as I left the cabin.

**shudder** To tremble or shake, as from fear or cold; shiver. The thought of making a speech in front of the whole school made me **shudder**.

**tremble** To shake with fear or cold. The puppy was **trembling** when we found it in the snow.

**vibrate** To move back and forth rapidly; quiver. Piano strings make noise by **vibrating**.

**shock** *v.* Cause to feel surprise, terror, or disgust. Everyone was **shocked** that my grandmother could play the harmonica.

**astonish** To surprise very much; fill with wonder; amaze. It **astonishes** me that many people don't know how to read.

**astound** To stun with amazement. The Grand Canyon **astounds** people the first time they see it.

**dismay** To fill with alarm or disappointment. Margaret **dismayed** her parents when she forgot to call.

**startle** To frighten, surprise, or excite suddenly. The wrong note from the tuba **startled** everyone at the concert.

**stun** To shock; to astonish. The bad news **stunned** us all.

**surprise** To strike with mild astonishment, as by being unexpected or unusual. The students' high scores on the test **surprised** the teacher.

## short

**short** *adj.* Not long; not tall. The child's legs were too **short** to reach the bike's pedals.

**brief** Not long; short. I need a *brief* description of your missing pet.

**hasty** Quick. We ate a *hasty* dinner to get to the show on time.

**quick** Done in a short time; fast. We took a *quick* trip to San Francisco for the weekend.

**small** Not large in size or amount. A guppy is a very *small* fish.

ANTONYMS: **large, long, slow, tall**

**shout** *v.* To make a sudden loud yell. The crowd **shouted** when the team scored.

**howl** To make a long, loud cry. Nobody is sure why wolves *howl* together.

**scream** To utter a long, shrill cry, as in pain, terror, or surprise. The baby *screamed* when its balloon popped.

**shriek** To make a sharp, shrill outcry, scream, or sound. The wind *shrieked* through the trees.

**wail** To make or utter a long, high cry. I'm not *wailing* — I'm singing!

**whoop** To make loud cries. The crowd of children *whooped* as they attacked the snow fort.

ANTONYMS: **mumble, murmur, whisper**

**shower** *n.* A short rainfall. The weather forecast calls for **showers** this afternoon.

**cloudburst** A sudden, heavy rainfall. A rainbow appeared after the *cloudburst*.

**downpour** A heavy fall of rain. We were soaked in a *downpour*.

**drizzle** A light, continuous rain; mist. It didn't rain hard, but there was a *drizzle* all day.

**sprinkle** A light rain. The plants did not get enough water from this morning's *sprinkle*.

See also **splash**.

## slogan

**shy** *adj.* Quiet; not at ease with strangers. Because he was **shy**, Brian did not like to go to parties.

**bashful** Timid or uncomfortable with strangers; shy. The *bashful* child hid behind his parents.

**modest** Bashful; shy. My cousin is too *modest* to brag about her musical talents.

**timid** Shy. The *timid* boys and girls did not get up to dance right away.

ANTONYMS: **bold, confident**

**silent** *adj.* Remaining quiet; not speaking. The house is **silent** when everyone is asleep.

**dumb** Speechless for a time; silent. Many animals remain *dumb* when they are frightened.

**quiet** Having or making little noise. Everything was *quiet* just before the storm broke.

**speechless** Not speaking or unable to speak. The exciting movie left me *speechless*.

**still** Making no sound; silent. Everyone was so *still* that the cat's purr sounded loud.

ANTONYMS: **loud, noisy**

**skin** *v.* To scrape off skin. I **skinned** my knee playing football.

**rub** To move over the surface of with pressure or friction. I *rubbed* the edges of the shelf with sandpaper.

**scrape** To rub (a surface) with or against something edged or rough, so as to take off something stuck on. I *scraped* the ice off the car window.

**scratch** To tear or mark the surface of with something sharp or rough. I *scratched* the table top when I dragged the box across it.

**slogan** *n.* An expression or motto used in advertising or campaigning. The apple grower's **slogan** was "Eat an apple a day!"



# THESAURUS

## smooth

**expression** A word or group of words used together. "I'll see you later" is just an *expression*.

**jingle** A catchy song or poem, especially for advertising purposes. I can't stop singing that store's *jingle*.

**motto** A word or phrase that expresses a principle or slogan, inscribed on a seal, coin, or other object. The *motto* of the United States, *e pluribus unum*, means "one out of many."

**smooth** *adj.* Without rough spots or lumps. A **smooth** layer of snow covered the football field.

**even** Flat and smooth. The car seemed to glide over the wide and *even* road.

**flat** Having a level surface; smooth. There was no wind, and the sea looked *flat*.

**level** Having a flat surface, with each part at the same height. The floors in the old house were not *level*.

ANTONYMS: **bumpy, coarse, rough**

**soil** *v.* To make or become dirty. Brooke slid in the grass and **soiled** her soccer uniform.

**blur** To smudge; to make messy or unclear. The dirty windshield wipers *blurred* the window so much that we couldn't see out.

**dirty** To make or become dirty. The spinning car wheels splashed mud and *dirtied* my clothes.

**mark** To make a mark or marks on. The students' shoes *marked* the gym floor.

**smear** To spread, rub, or cover with a greasy, sticky, or dirty substance. The baby *smear*ed oatmeal in his hair.

**smudge** To blur, smear, or soil. Rain *smudged* the ink on the cover of Fran's book report.

**stain** To make or become dirty or discolored; soil; spot. Spots of paint *stained* the floors and walls in the artist's messy, cluttered studio.

ANTONYMS: **clean, scrub, wash**

## squeeze

**sparkle** *v.* To shine or glitter as if giving off sparks of light. His eyes **sparkled** with joy.

**glisten** To sparkle or shine. The water *glistened* in the sunshine.

**shimmer** To shine with an unsteady, glimmering light. The stars *shimmered* in the night sky.

**shine** To give off or reflect light. The moon does not *shine* as brightly as the sun.

**splash** *v.* To throw or scatter water or mud. The baby **splashed** the water in the tub.

**scatter** To throw about in various places; sprinkle. The dancers *scattered* flowers on the stage.

**shower** To rain. It *showered* all morning.

**spray** To send out (a liquid) in fine drops. I *sprayed* water on all the plants.

**sprinkle** To scatter in drops or bits, as of water or sugar. You should *sprinkle* water over that shirt before you start to iron it.

**spoil** *v.* To become bad. Milk **spoil**s quickly if it's not kept cold.

**decay** To rot or cause to rot. The dead leaves *decayed* on the forest floor.

**mold** To become moldy. The two-week old cheese had *molded* in the refrigerator.

**rot** To decay, spoil, or decompose. The tomatoes in the garden *rotted* while we were away on vacation.

See also **damage**.

**squeeze** *v.* To press hard on or together. **Squeeze** the toothpaste tube at the bottom.

**cram** To push or stuff into a tight or crowded space. I think I *crammed* too many books into my pack.

**crowd** To fill too full; cram; pack. The people *crowded* into the gym to see the basketball game.



## step

**jam** To press or squeeze things or people together into a small space. Eight people *jammed* into the small car.

**press** To crush or squeeze so as to draw out juice. I think it's better to *press* garlic instead of chopping it.

**stuff** To cram, jam, or shove. We *stuffed* the turkey with a mixture of sausage and cornbread.

**step** *v.* To move by taking steps. Don't *step* on the broken glass.

**stroll** To walk in a slow, idle way. We *strolled* along the beach.

**stumble** To walk or speak in a shaky way. I was so tired that I *stumbled* up the stairs to bed.

**tramp** To walk with a heavy step. We *tramped* back to camp after the long hike.

**trample** To flatten by stepping on. That dog *trampled* everything in my garden!

**trudge** To walk wearily or with great effort; plod. The tired soldiers *trudged* uphill.

**stop** *v.* To come or bring to a halt. The wagon *stopped* at the river to let the horses drink.

**flag** To stop by signaling. I managed to *flag* a taxi.

**halt** To stop. The car race was *halted* because of rain.

**quit** To cease from; stop. The workers *quit* work early on the day before the holiday.

See also **abandon**.

ANTONYMS: **begin, start**

**story** *n.* A tale that is usually made up. Grandfather told my favorite *story*.

**fable** A tale that teaches a lesson, especially one with animals that behave like people. One famous *fable* is called "The Town Mouse and the Country Mouse."

## strike

**fiction** Any story about imaginary people and events. Stories about people living on other planets in the future are science *fiction*.

**legend** An old story of strange or remarkable happenings that may or may not have some basis in truth. Most people have heard the *legends* told about John Henry.

**myth** A traditional story, usually about such creatures as gods and heroes, often offering an explanation of something in nature or of past events. According to one *myth*, Pegasus was a horse that could fly.

**narrative** An account, story, or tale. Mark Twain wrote an amusing *narrative* about his life as a riverboat captain.

**nonfiction** Any story about real people and events. Magazine articles are usually *nonfiction*.

**tale** A story, narrative, or account of real or imaginary events. In the *tales* of Paul Bunyan, Babe is a giant blue ox.

**stream** *n.* A small flowing river. This *stream* is a great place to catch trout.

**brook** A natural stream smaller than a river. A *brook* flowed through the farm.

**creek** A stream, especially one smaller than a river and larger than a brook. A *creek* connects the two mountain lakes.

**river** A large, natural stream of water, usually fed by smaller streams and flowing to the sea, a lake, or other body of water. The Nile is the longest *river* in the world.

**spring** A flow of water out of the ground. Water from *springs* tastes especially good.

**strike** *v.* To hit. The *Titanic*, a large ocean liner, sank when it *struck* an iceberg.

**crash** To hit making a loud noise. The jar *crashed* onto the floor.

# THESAURUS

## struggle

*knock* To hit. My brother *knocked* the lamp off the table.

*smash* To hit with great force. A baseball *smashed* the kitchen window.

See also **attack**.

**struggle** *n.* A fight. The kittens had a playful **struggle** over the ball of yarn.

*battle* Any fight, conflict, or struggle.

Many *battles* are fought in every war.

*combat* A battle or fight. Soldiers must always be ready to enter *combat* for their country.

*conflict* A struggle, fight, or battle. The two countries had a *conflict* over a spy.

*contest* A struggle, fight, or quarrel. A tug of war is a kind of *contest*.

**swap** *v.* To trade or exchange. The boys **swapped** baseball cards.

*bargain* To try to get a better price. I *bargained* with the owner before I bought the radio.

*barter* To trade by exchanging goods or services without using money. Many people in poor countries *barter* rather than pay for the things they need.

*deal* To do business; trade. That store *deals* only in records for children.

*exchange* To give one thing for something else; trade; swap. Can you *exchange* this shirt for a larger size?

*switch* To exchange. The twins *switched* hats, but no one noticed.

*trade* To exchange (one thing for another). My sister *traded* our cat for a puppy.

## T

**task** *n.* A chore or job. Each scout had a **task** to do at camp.

*assignment* Something assigned; as a lesson. Our *assignment* was to look for political cartoons in the newspaper.

*chore* A routine task, as in housework.

## team

Farmers have to begin their *chores* early in the morning.

*duty* Any work or task that is part of a particular job or occupation. It's a doctor's *duty* to try to save people's lives.

*responsibility* A person or thing for which one is responsible. Taking out the trash is my *responsibility*.

**teacher** *n.* A person who teaches or helps others learn. The **teacher** helped the students with a math problem.

*coach* A teacher or trainer, as for pupils, athletes, or actors. The speech *coach* taught the actors to speak with a British accent.

*trainer* A person who trains. The *trainer* had the boxer run and work out every day.

*tutor* A person who teaches or gives private lessons. Brian had a math *tutor* so he could pass the college test.

**team** *n.* A group of people who work or play together. Sharon and her cousin Scott were on the same baseball **team**.

*club* A group of people who join together. The library formed a *club* for people to discuss books they've read.

*crew* Any group of people working together. Andrea was on the cleanup *crew* after the party.

*force* A group of people who do a particular job. My mother is an officer in the police *force*.

*league* A number of persons, groups, or countries united for some common purpose. The United Nations replaced the *League* of Nations.

*outfit* Any organized group or team of persons who do some particular work, especially a military organization. My brother is in an *outfit* of marines.

*society* An organization. I belong to the American *Society* for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals.



## tender

**tender** *adj.* Gentle and loving. Good nurses are **tender** with their patients.  
**gentle** Kind and tender. You must be **gentle** when you play with a baby.  
**kind** Willing to help; gentle; friendly; sympathetic. The kind boy helped carry Mr. Kelly's packages upstairs.  
**soft** Tender, kind, and sympathetic. My father may look stern, but he has a very **soft** heart.

ANTONYMS: **cruel, hard, unkind**

**trek** *n.* A long hard journey. Lewis and Clark made a **trek** across our country from St. Louis, Missouri, to the Pacific Ocean.

**journey** Travel from one place to another; trip. The **journey** from the East to the West by covered wagon took months.

**tour** A trip during which one visits a number of places for pleasure or to perform, as a theatrical company, musician, or athlete. My family went on a bicycle **tour** of Canada.

**travel** (*pl.*) Journeys or trips. One of John Steinbeck's books describes his **travels** across our country.

**trip** A journey or voyage. Our class saw slides of the principal's **trip** to Egypt.

**voyage** Any journey, as through air or space. Before the invention of the steam engine, ocean **voyages** were very slow.

**twist** *v.* To turn. I **twisted** my ankle while I was running.

**curve** To bend. The road **curves** to the left.

**swerve** To turn or cause to turn to get out of the way. Juanita **swerved** her bike to avoid the pothole.

**swirl** To move in a twisting or spinning motion. The dirty water **swirled** down the drain.

**whirl** To spin or make to spin around very fast. The dancers **whirled** around the crowded ballroom.

## unpleasant

**wriggle** To squirm or twist. The child **wriggled** with delight.

**wring** To squeeze liquid out by twisting. **Wring** out the mop before you put it away.

## U

**unhappy** *adj.* Sad; not happy. Flo was **unhappy** when she missed the bus.

**gloomy** Sad. Why do you have such a **gloomy** look on your face?

**sad** Unhappy or depressed; sorrowful. We felt **sad** when we heard you were sick.

**sorrowful** Feeling, showing, or causing sorrow. Susan felt **sorrowful** because her dog was lost.

ANTONYMS: **cheerful, glad, happy, joyful**

**unkind** *adj.* Cruel; not kind. Paul was ashamed of being **unkind** to his aunt.

**cruel** Eager or willing to give pain to others; brutal; not caring whether others suffer; pitiless. Many groups in the community try to prevent anyone's being **cruel** to animals.

**heartless** Cruel; without kindness. You would have to be **heartless** not to love a cute kitten.

**mean** Not noble in mind or character; base. Some characters in fairy tales are **mean** to the heroes.

**spiteful** Filled with bitter resentment. Karen thought her brother was being **spiteful** when he hid her teddy bear.

**vicious** Spiteful or mean. The child was hurt by the **vicious** remark.

ANTONYM: **kind**

**unpleasant** *adj.* Not agreeable; not pleasant. The weather was **unpleasant** all weekend.

**annoying** Troublesome; irritating. The insects are always most **annoying** around sunset.

**disgusting** Arousing disgust; offensive.

# THESAURUS

## urgent

Some of the scenes of polluted lakes were *disgusting*.

*nasty* Disgusting to smell or taste. Sour milk has a *nasty* smell.

*troublesome* Causing trouble. The teacher sent the *troublesome* student to the principal's office.

ANTONYMS: agreeable, pleasant, pleasing

**urgent** *adj.* Requiring quick action or attention. The secretary came in with an **urgent** message.

*critical* Of, related to, or causing a crisis. Getting a good education is *critical* to your future.

*important* Deserving special attention or notice. You received an *important* phone call while you were out.

*pressing* Needing immediate attention; urgent; important. I have some *pressing* business to discuss with the boss.

ANTONYM: unimportant

## V

**vast** *adj.* Very large; huge; enormous. Australia has a **vast** desert stretching across much of the continent.

*broad* Of considerable size; large and spacious. The Snake River Canyon is not so *broad* as the Grand Canyon, but it is deeper.

*enormous* Very large; huge; vast. The blue whale is an *enormous* animal.

*huge* Very large; vast. A glacier is a *huge* river of ice.

*immense* Vast; enormous. Even from a distance, Mt. Hood looks *immense*.

ANTONYMS: modest, narrow, small, tiny

## W

**whisper** *v.* To speak softly. Please **whisper** while the baby is sleeping.

## worthwhile

*grumble* To complain in a mumbling way.

My sister always *grumbles* about having to help out around the house.

*mumble* To speak in a low, unclear way, as with lips nearly closed. Tony *mumbled* something just before he fell asleep.

*murmur* To make a low, unclear sound. I can't understand you when you *murmur*.

ANTONYMS: howl, scream, shout, shriek, wail

**wonderful** *adj.* Causing wonder; amazing. Jim Thorpe was a **wonderful** Olympic athlete.

*incredible* So strange, unusual, or extraordinary as to be unbelievable. Many animals that live in the sea look *incredible*.

*marvelous* Causing wonder; amazing. Beethoven was a *marvelous* composer. *wondrous* Wonderful; marvelous. The Lincoln Memorial in Washington, D.C., is a *wondrous* sight.

ANTONYMS: boring, common, usual

**worry** *v.* To be or make someone uneasy or upset. The whole town **worried** about the trapped miners.

*distress* To cause to suffer, worry, or be sorry. I *distressed* my parents by forgetting to call them.

*fret* To make or be cross, irritated, or worried. Don't *fret* if I'm late.

*trouble* To make or become distressed, annoyed, worried, or ill. It *troubles* me to see you looking so unhappy.

*upset* To disturb mentally. I *upset* my teacher with my bad grades.

ANTONYMS: calm, soothe

**worthwhile** *adj.* Having worth or importance. Reading is a **worthwhile** way to spend time.

*important* Having much significance, value, or influence. The ability to write well is an *important* skill to have.



## worthwhile

*profitable* Bringing profit or gain. Ben's *profitable* lemonade stand helped him buy a catcher's mitt.

*useful* Having a use; giving service; helpful; beneficial. A dictionary is a *useful* reference book to have when you need to check a word's spelling.

*valuable* Being worth money or effort; having value. Any painting by the famous Dutch painter Rembrandt is *valuable*.

ANTONYMS: useless, worthless

## wrap

*wrap* *v.* To put a cover around something; to wind around; to cover. *Wrap* the scarf around your neck to keep warm.

*blanket* To cover completely. Fog *blanketed* the bay and the surrounding hills.

*bundle* To make into a bundle. We *bundled* our important things together and ran from the flood.

*envelop* To wrap, cover, or surround. Thick clouds *enveloped* the mountaintop.

ANTONYMS: uncover, unwrap

# WRITER'S GUIDE





## SPELLING RULES

### Unit 1: The Sounds /a/, /e/, /i/, /o/, /u/

The short vowel sounds are often spelled with one vowel letter.

- /a/ is spelled with **a**, as in *snag*.
  - /e/ is spelled with **e**, as in *chest*.
  - /i/ is spelled with **i**, as in *twist*.
  - /o/ is spelled with **o**, as in *flock*.
  - /u/ is spelled with **u**, as in *dusk*.
- ☐ /e/ can be spelled with **ea**, as in *threat*.

### Unit 2: The Sounds /ī/ and /ā/

Here are two ways to spell /ī/.

- with **i-consonant-e**, as in *strike*
- with **y**, as in *type*

Here are two ways to spell /ā/.

- with **a-consonant-e**, as in *spade*
- with **ai**, as in *fail*

### Unit 3: The Sounds /ē/ and /ō/

Here are three ways to spell /ē/.

- with **ea**, as in *stream*
  - with **ee**, as in *screen*
- ☐ When /ē/ comes at the end of a word of more than one syllable, it is usually spelled **y**, as in *city*. *Ski* is one of the few English words that has /ē/ spelled with **i**.

Here are two ways to spell /ō/.

- with **o-consonant-e**, as in *code*
- with **oa**, as in *coast*

## Unit 4: Words with *ed* and *ing*

- When *ed* and *ing* are added to most verbs, the spelling does not change.  
point—pointed      shout—shouting
- If a verb has a short vowel sound and ends with one consonant letter, double the final consonant before adding *ed* and *ing*.  
swap—swapped      grab—grabbing

## Unit 5: The Sounds /s/ and /z/

Here are four ways to spell /s/.

- with **s**, as in *season*
- with **c**, as in *recite*
- with **ce**, as in *force*
- with **se**, as in *tense*

Here are two ways to spell /z/.

- with **z**, as in *cozy*
- with **s**, as in *closet*

## Unit 7: The Sounds /k/ and /kw/

Here are four ways to spell /k/.

- with **c**, as in *comics*
- with **ck**, as in *deck*
- with **ch**, as in *ache*
- with **cc**, as in *occupied*

The sounds /kw/ are spelled with **qu**, as in *quit*.



## SPELLING RULES

- Usually, the spellings of the smaller words do not change when they are combined to make a compound word. Sometimes, however, a letter is dropped.

where + ever = wherever

### Unit 25: Synonyms and Antonyms

- A **synonym** is a word that has the same or nearly the same meaning as another word.

drowsy      sleepy

- An **antonym** is a word that has an opposite meaning.

victory      defeat

### Unit 26: Social Studies Words

- Some social studies words come from Latin.

Latin	Meaning	Example
<i>libertas</i>	“freedom”	liberty
<i>congressus</i>	“meeting”	congress

### Unit 27: Prefixes

- A **prefix** is a letter or group of letters added to the beginning of a base word. A prefix changes the meaning of the base word. Here is a chart of some prefixes and their meanings.

Prefix	Meaning	Example
<i>dis-</i>	“the opposite of”	<i>disobey</i>
<i>re-</i>	“again”	<i>rewrite</i>
<i>un-</i>	“not”	<i>unpleasant</i>
	“the opposite of”	<i>uncover</i>
<i>in-</i>	“not”	<i>incorrect</i>

## Unit 28: Suffixes

- A **suffix** is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a base word. Here is a chart of some suffixes and their meanings.

Suffix	Meaning	Example
-ful	“full of”	powerful
-less	“without”	hopeless

## Unit 29: Noun Suffixes

The suffixes *-ion*, *-ness*, and *-ment* can be added to words to form nouns. The spelling changes when you add *-ion* and *-ness* to some words.

- Sometimes you must drop the letter *e*.  
educate + *-ion* = education
- Sometimes you must change the *y* to *i*.  
tardy + *-ness* = tardiness
- ☐ In *addition*, you add *-ition*.  
add + *-ition* = addition

## Unit 31: Word Families

- A **word family** is a group of words that have the same base word. Here are some base words and their related words.

Base Word	Related Word
enter	entrance
move	movable
count	discount

## Unit 32: Syllable Patterns

- When a word has two consonant letters between two vowel letters, divide the word into syllables between the two consonants.  
hunger    hun·ger            target    tar·get

## SPELLING RULES

When a word ends with a consonant letter before *le*, divide the word before the consonant.

sample    sam·ple            candle    can·dle

### Unit 33: Syllable Patterns

Here are two ways to divide two-syllable words into syllables.

- If there is a long vowel sound in the first syllable, divide the word before the middle consonant.

robot    ro·bot            basin    ba·sin

- If there is a short vowel sound in the first syllable, divide the word after the middle consonant.

dragon    drag·on            petal    pet·al

### Unit 34: Three-Syllable Words

- Some words contain syllables that are difficult to hear. When you spell these words, be sure to write each syllable.

chocolate    favorite

### Unit 35: Language Arts Words

- Some words are used in the study of grammar, composition, and literature. These words can help you become more skillful in using language: *predicate, paragraph, nonfiction*.



**TROUBLESOME WORDS TO SPELL**

about	have	quite	today
already	haven't	remember	together
am	hear	right	tomorrow
and	hello	school	tonight
anyway	her	sincerely	too
are	here	some	truly
awhile	hospital	sometimes	two
because	I'll	stationery	until
before	I'm	studying	very
birthday	isn't	suppose	want
cannot	it's	teacher	we
can't	know	Thanksgiving	well
close	letter	that's	went
couldn't	maybe	their	we're
cousin	Mr.	them	will
didn't	Mrs.	there	won't
don't	name	there's	would
down	now	they	write
everybody	off	they're	writing
for	our	think	you
friend	outside	thought	your
from	pretty	time	you're
grammar	quit	to	yours

## LANGUAGE: A Glossary of Terms and Examples

### Grammar

#### Sentences

- A **sentence** is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It starts with a capital letter. It always ends with a punctuation mark.
- A **declarative sentence** makes a statement. It ends with a period (.).  
Gray storm clouds filled the sky.
- An **interrogative sentence** asks a question. It ends with a question mark (?).  
Where is the soccer ball?
- An **exclamatory sentence** shows strong feeling or surprise. It ends with an exclamation point (!).  
What a beautiful day!
- An **imperative sentence** makes a request or commands. It ends with a period (.).  
Be careful riding on that street.
- The **subject** of a sentence tells whom or what the sentence is about. It may be one word or a group of words.  
My mother studies Chinese on weekends.
- The **predicate** of a sentence tells something about the subject. It includes an action verb or linking verb and other words that go with it.  
She will be a translator someday.

#### Nouns

- A **noun** is a word that names a person, place, or thing.
- A **common noun** names any person, place, or thing. It is a general word that begins with a small letter.  
lantern      squirrel      roommate      cupboard

- A **proper noun** names a particular person, place, or thing. A proper noun begins with a capital letter.

Mr. Chow    Tuesday    New Jersey    Arkansas River

- A **singular noun** names one person, place, or thing.

parrot    Ohio    wagon

- A **plural noun** names more than one person, place, or thing.

children    homes    cars

- To make most singular nouns plural, add *s*.

sandal—sandals      hospital—hospitals  
coward—cowards      bicycle—bicycles

- If a singular noun ends with *s*, *sh*, *ch*, or *x*, add *es*.

stress—stresses      couch—couches  
suffix—suffixes      splash—splashes

- If a singular noun ends in *y* with a vowel before it, add *s* to form the plural.

turkey—turkeys      valley—valleys

- If a singular noun ends in *y* with a consonant before it, change the *y* to *i*. Then add *es* to form the plural.

biography—biographies      country—countries

- Some nouns are not made plural by adding *s* or *es*.

Nouns That End in <i>f</i> or <i>fe</i>	Nouns That Change Vowel Spelling	Nouns That Do Not Change
scarf—scarves knife—knives	man—men goose—geese	trout—trout pants—pants

- Some singular nouns are made plural in other ways.

child—children      ox—oxen

- A **possessive noun** shows ownership or possession.

- To form the possessive of a singular noun, add an apostrophe and an *s* (*'s*).

editor—editor's      speaker—speaker's



# LANGUAGE

## TERMS AND EXAMPLES

- Some words can become adjectives by adding *y*.  
crust—crusty      the crusty bread

### Adverbs

- An **adverb** is a word that adds meaning to a verb by telling *how*, *when*, or *where*.  
The vase was broken accidentally. (how)  
It was knocked over yesterday. (when)  
It fell here. (where)
- Adverbs are used to compare actions.
- Adverbs that use *more* compare two actions.  
I exercise more frequently than Marcia.
- Adverbs that use *most* compare more than two actions.  
That skier glided the most swiftly of all.
- A few adverbs of one syllable use *er* and *est* to compare.  
I stayed at the party longer than Mel.  
Brit stayed at the party the longest of anyone.
- Some adverbs are formed by adding *ly* to words.  
total—totally

### Vocabulary

#### Antonyms

- **Antonyms** are words that have opposite meanings. Here are some antonym pairs.  
victory—defeat      increase—decrease

#### Synonyms

- **Synonyms** are words that have the same or nearly the same meaning. Here are some synonym pairs.  
sorrow—sadness      drowsy—sleepy

### Homophones

- **Homophones** are words that sound alike. They are spelled differently and have different meanings. Here are some homophones.

sense—cents      creek—creak

### Prefixes

- A **prefix** is a letter or group of letters added to the beginning of a base word. A prefix changes the meaning of the base word.

obey—disobey

### Suffixes

- A **suffix** is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a base word.

peace—peaceful

### Word Family

- A **word family** is a group of words that has the same base word.

prove—approve, approval, disapprove

### Analogies

- An **analogy** is a group of words that shows the relationship between things. An analogy is often presented as two pairs of objects.

*Finger is to hand as toe is to foot.*

## DICTIONARY: A Glossary of Terms and Examples

### Alphabetical Order

- The order of letters from A to Z is called **alphabetical** order. Words in a dictionary are listed in alphabetical order. These words are in alphabetical order.

apartment  
comet  
committee  
loaf  
product  
tailor

### Guide Words

- There are two **guide words** at the top of each dictionary page. The word on the left is the first word on the page. The word on the right is the last word. All the other words on the page are in alphabetical order between those words.

imagine	jogger
<b>im·ag·ine</b> /i·maj'in/ <i>v.</i> <b>im·ag·ined</b> , <b>im·ag·in·ing</b> To have an idea or form a picture in your mind.	<b>in·ter·rupt</b> /in'tə·rupt'/ <i>v.</i> <b>1</b> To cause someone to stop doing something. <b>2</b> To stop an action.

### Entry Word

- On a dictionary page, an **entry word** is a word in dark print that is followed by its meaning. Entry words appear in alphabetical order and are divided into syllables.

**jew·el** /jōō'əl/ *n.* **1** A precious stone. **2** An ornament set with gems.

**jew·el·ry** /jōō'əl·rē/ *n.* Objects worn for decoration, such as necklaces, rings, etc.

**jog·ger** /jog'ər/ *n.* A person who jogs or runs regularly for exercise.

### Entry

- An **entry** is an entry word and all the information about it.



## Pronunciation

- A **pronunciation** follows each entry word. Letters and symbols show how the word is pronounced.

**is·sue** /ish'oo/ *n., v.* **is·sued, is·su·ing**  
 1 *n.* Something sent out regularly: an *issue* of a magazine. 2 *v.* To send or give out.

## Part of Speech

- A **part of speech** tells whether the word is a noun, a verb, or some other part of speech. The names are abbreviated.

## Definition

- A **definition** tells what a word means. Many words have more than one definition. An example sentence may follow the definition.

**in·sect** /in'sekt/ *n.* A very small animal with six legs and often with wings.  
**it·self** /it'self/ *pron.* Its own self: The goat stumbled and hurt *itself*.

## Example

- An **example** shows you how to use the word.

## Word History

- A **word history** explains how a word and its meaning have developed. A word history usually gives the meaning of the older word that the modern English word comes from. In the **Spelling Dictionary**, this symbol ► indicates a word history.

**a·pron** /ā'prən/ *n.* A garment worn over clothes to protect them. ► *Apron* comes from the Middle French word *naperon*, "a small cloth."

## Pronunciation Key

- A pronunciation key explaining the pronunciation marks appears at

the beginning of a dictionary. A brief key is often found at the bottom of dictionary pages as well.

act, âte, câre, ârt; egg, ēven; if, ice; on, ōver, ôr; bōók, fōod; up, tûrn;  
 æ=a in ago, e in listen, i in giraffe, o in pilot, u in circus; yoo=u in music; oil; out;  
 chair; sing; shop; thank; th̄at; zh in treasure.

### Syllables

- A word is made up of several parts called **syllables**. Each syllable has a vowel sound.
- In a word with two or more syllables in the dictionary, the **accent mark** (') in the pronunciation shows which syllable is said with the most force.
- The syllable with the accent mark is called the **accented syllable**.
- A **secondary accent** is a lighter mark. It comes after a syllable you say with a little less force.

## COMPOSITION

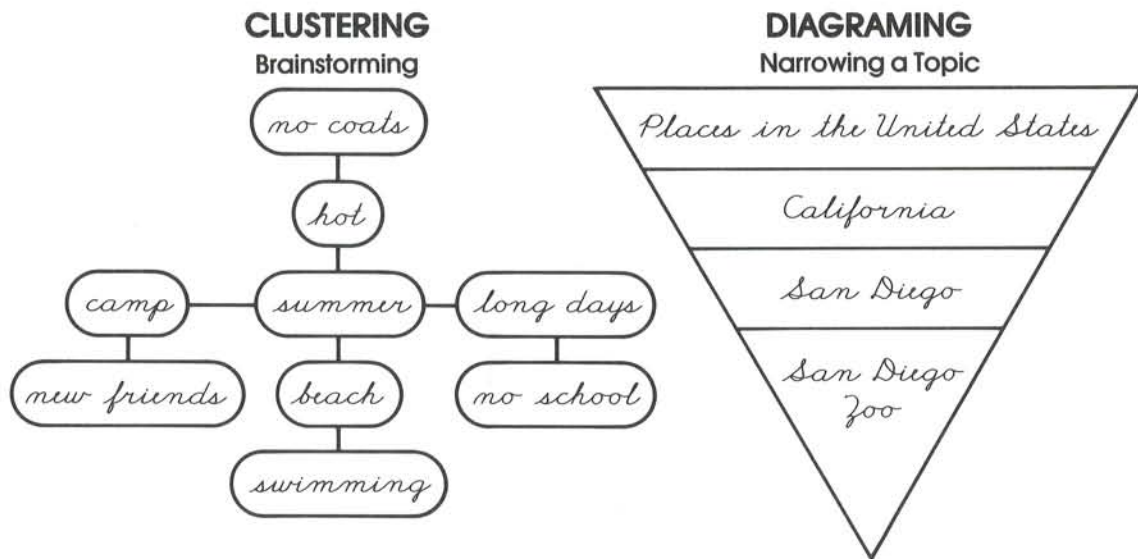
### Guides for the Writing Process

#### Prewriting

Use this checklist to plan your writing.

- Choose a topic.
- Choose a purpose for writing.
- Ask yourself questions about your topic.
- Choose a prewriting plan that works best for the form of writing you have chosen.
- Add more ideas as you think of them.
- Read over your plan.
- Begin to put your ideas in order.

Here are some prewriting plans.





# COMPOSITION

## GUIDES FOR THE WRITING PROCESS

### CHARTING Organizing Facts

<u>Who</u>	<u>What</u>	<u>When</u>	<u>Where</u>	<u>Why</u>
Anne	mows lawn	week-ends	local homes	to earn money
José	feeds horses	every day	the ranch	to help family
Ray	waters plants	once a week	in house	likes growing things

### OUTLINING Organizing Research

<u>Dinosaurs</u>
Kinds of
A. Lizard-hipped
1. Brontosaurus
2. Tyrannosaurus
B. Bird-hipped
1. Stegosaurus
2. Triceratops
Living Habits
A. Lived in swamps
B. Got food from plants

### MAPPING Drawing a Plan

#### Beginning

Val wants to be on the U. S. Olympic Swim Team.

She starts to practice every day for hours at a time.

#### Middle

Val wins many local and state races.

Val signs up for a national race to qualify for the Olympic team.

One week before the race Val gets the flu.

#### Ending

Val must stay in bed. She cannot practice.

On race day Val does swim. She finishes third. She makes team.

## **Composing**

Use this checklist as you write.

- Read over your plan.
- Think about your purpose and audience.
- Use your plan to put your ideas on paper quickly.
- Do not worry about spelling, punctuation, or grammar at this time.
- Remember that you may get more ideas as you write.
- Add more new ideas as you think of them.

## **Revising**

Use these checklists when you revise and edit your work.

### **Revising Your First Draft**

- Read over your work.
- Be sure your audience has enough information.
- Be sure the order of your sentences makes sense.
- Check that each sentence is a complete thought.
- Be sure each paragraph has a clear topic sentence.
- Check that all the detail sentences support the main idea.
- Be sure the words are lively and interesting.

### **Editing and Proofreading**

- Be sure you used capital letters correctly.
- Be sure you used punctuation marks correctly.
- Check the spelling of each word.
- Be sure you used each word correctly.
- Be sure the grammar is correct.
- Be sure the first line of each paragraph is indented.
- Be sure your handwriting is neat and readable.

# COMPOSITION

## GUIDES FOR THE WRITING PROCESS

### Editing and Proofreading Marks

- Use **Editing and Proofreading Marks** when you revise your writing. These marks help you see the changes you want to make.
- Remember you can go back and change words or sentences as many times as you want or need to.

#### Editing and Proofreading Marks

≡	capitalize
○	make a period
^	add something
^	add a comma
“ ”	add quotation marks
⤵	take something away
○	spell correctly
¶	indent the paragraph
/	make a lowercase letter
tr	transpose

¶ The school fair will be held next  
tuesday afternoon. All students are  
going to attend. There will be a contest  
and a crafts show. Science projects will  
also be displayed. Teachers families,  
and friends will be invited. The  
school band will play The Star-Spangled  
Banner. Then the principal and the  
coach will give a speech. Prizes will be  
given for the best compositions and  
drawings. ¶ The fair has always been  
a highlight of the school year. Plans  
are already being made for the fair  
next year. It will place take in  
April instead of in May.

### A Glossary of Terms and Examples

#### Kinds of Sentences

- A **sentence** is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. It always begins with a capital letter. It always ends with a punctuation mark.



- A **declarative sentence** makes a statement. It ends with a period (.).  
Grey storm clouds filled the sky.
- An **interrogative sentence** asks a question. It ends with a question mark (?).  
Where is the soccer ball?
- An **exclamatory sentence** shows strong feeling or surprise. It ends with an exclamation point (!).  
What a beautiful day!
- An **imperative sentence** makes a request or commands. It ends with a period (.).  
Be careful riding on that street.

### Paragraph

- A **paragraph** is a group of sentences that develops one main idea.
- The **topic sentence** expresses the main idea of the paragraph.
- **Detail sentences** explain or tell about the main idea.
- The first line of a paragraph is indented.

### Descriptive Paragraph

- A **descriptive paragraph** paints a picture with words such as colorful adjectives and adverbs.
- The **topic sentence** clearly tells what the subject is.
- **Detail sentences** give particular information about the subject.

Here is an example of a descriptive paragraph.

*I like summer evenings when the dark comes late. At seven the sky is still a dreamy purple-gray. The round white moon must be heavy, for it hangs as low as a street lamp. No one on our block wants to go indoors. I hear the squeals of little kids playing and the river-rush of skate wheels. Bicycles glide past as silently as deep-sea fish. Their tail lights gleam like orange eyes. The air is soft and warm, and I smell newly cut grass and wet cement.*

### How-to Paragraph

- A **how-to paragraph** explains how to do or make something.
- The **topic sentence** names the task that is being explained.
- The **detail sentences** name the necessary materials and the order of the steps required to do the task.
- The words *first*, *next*, *then*, and *last* help to show the order of the steps.

Here is an example of a how-to paragraph.

*You can use a trick to separate pepper and salt. First spill some salt on a table. Then sprinkle a little pepper on top. Tell your audience that you can remove the pepper from the salt. Yet you will not touch either! Now take out a pocket comb. Run it through your hair to give it an electric charge. Then pass it just above the mound of pepper and salt. The lighter pepper grains will rise and cling to the comb.*

### Opinion Paragraph

- An **opinion paragraph** states the writer's opinion about an issue or topic and gives reasons for that opinion.
- The **topic sentence** clearly states the writer's opinion.
- **Detail sentences** give reasons that support that opinion.

Here is an example of an opinion paragraph.

*The best vacation spot is at home. When my family stays home, I can do all the things I enjoy most. For example, I like being with my friends, listening to my tapes, making models, and playing softball. I can't do these things when we travel. When we go on trips, we spend long, boring hours in a car. We waste time looking for places to eat or sleep. The food is seldom as good as our dinners at home. Often motels are noisy or uncomfortable. Traveling makes us tired, and usually someone gets cranky. Very often that someone is me.*

### Comparison Paragraph/Contrast Paragraph

- A **comparison paragraph** shows the ways in which two things are alike.
- A **contrast paragraph** points out the ways in which two things are different.
- The **topic sentence** expresses the main idea and states whether the paragraph will compare or contrast. The qualities to be discussed are named in this sentence.
- **Detail sentences** explain each quality mentioned in the topic sentence in the order in which they are named in the topic sentence.

Here is an example of a comparison paragraph.

*Hills and mountains are similar in three ways: general appearance, plant life, and formation. Both hills and mountains rise above the level land below them. Both can support grass, trees, and many kinds of blooming plants. Both hills and mountains were formed long ago. Many took shape when Ice Age glaciers melted and left "folded" formations behind.*



## COMPOSITION

### TERMS AND EXAMPLES

Here is an example of a business letter.

6420 Peak Ave. Colorado Springs, Colorado 80917 May 20, 20--	<b>Heading</b>
Ms. Susan Fillmore 1600 Eighth St. Colorado Springs, Colorado 80917	<b>Inside Address</b>
Dear Ms. Fillmore:	<b>Greeting</b>
I am a student at the River School, and my class is sponsoring a career day. We would like you to come and speak to us about your career as a lawyer. Would you be interested?	<b>Body</b>
Sincerely, <i>Fred Varney</i> Fred Varney	<b>Closing</b>
	<b>Signature</b>

### Journal

- A **journal entry** is a daily record of events. What someone writes in a journal each day is called an **entry**.
- Each journal entry gives the day and date and tells *who*, *what*, *when*, *where*, and *why* about events.
- A journal helps people remember events or things that have happened.

Here is an example of a journal entry.

September 13, 20--

Today went much better at my new school. Three of the girls in my class asked me to sit with them at lunch. One of them, Amanda, reminds me of my best friend Gina. She made me laugh. I still miss Gina and my friends in Ohio a lot. However, now I am starting to make friends here.

### Story

- A **story** has a beginning, a middle, and an ending.
- The **beginning** of a story introduces the setting and main character(s) of the story.
- The **middle** of a story tells the problem or challenge the main character faces. It can also include conversation, or dialogue between the characters.
- The **ending** tells how the main character(s) solves the problem.
- A story has a title. The first word and each important word begins with a capital letter.

Here is the beginning of a science-fiction story.

#### Colony on the Moon

Michael spent the day staring out the round window of the rocket. The moon had grown so large that it filled the window. It looked like a pale, mountainous desert. Until now, Michael had been excited. Now his hands and feet were icy. He felt a little weak and shaky, as if he were getting sick. The moon was so vast and empty. Somewhere down there was a tiny dark shadow that was the Armstrong colony. It was too small even to be seen yet. Michael felt his mother's hand on his shoulder. "Well, Michael," she said, "there it is—our new home."

### News Story

- A **news story** gives readers information.
- A news story has a short **headline** with a strong verb. The first word and each important word in the headline begins with a capital letter.
- The first paragraph of a news story is called the **lead**. The lead paragraph includes the facts that tell *who*, *what*, *when*, and *where*.
- The **body** of the news story has more details about the lead.

Here is an example of a lead paragraph for a news story.

#### Brave Pilot Sets Record

A new flight record was set at the Oakland International Airport on Sunday, June 10. Donald Rodewald completed the first solo flight around the world by a pilot unable to use his legs. As “Flying Tiger” Rodewald brought down his specially built Piper Comanche, cheers rose from the waiting crowd.

### Research Report

- A **research report** has several paragraphs that give facts about one subject.
- To begin research for a report, first take notes on the subject from two or more books. List the books you use in a bibliography.
- Make an outline using your notes.
- Follow your outline as you write your report.



Here is an example of paragraph from a research report.

*To the Hopi, keeping the past alive is as important as living in the present. They have a long history to remember. There have been Hopi in Oraibi, Arizona, for about 800 years. Today about 6,500 Hopi still live in that general region. Like their ancestors, many are farmers, herders, and artists. Some of their skills and crafts have been handed down over centuries. Yet the Hopi are also willing to adopt modern ideas and methods that seem useful and practical.*

## Poem

- A **poem** is a verse usually written in a regular rhythm and with a definite rhyme pattern.
- A **lyric poem** is usually short. It expresses what the writer sees, feels, hears, tastes, and smells.
- A **narrative poem** is a poem that tells a story. It has a setting, characters, and a plot. It has a beginning, a middle, and an end.
- Most narrative poems also have a strong rhythm and rhyme. They often tell about a great adventure.

Here is an example of the beginning of a narrative poem.

*Each month, when the moon was dark,  
Or so the town folk say,  
Old Whalen Buckley Butterworth  
Would saddle up his bay.  
Off he'd ride in the dead of night,  
Then back by moon next day.*

## MECHANICS: A Glossary of Rules

### Capital Letters

#### Names and Titles of Persons, Names of Pets, and *I*

- Begin each part of the name of a person with a capital letter.  
Capitalize an initial.  
Craig R. Rodman      Betty Miller
- Begin titles of people such as *Ms.*, *Mrs.*, and *Dr.* with a capital letter.  
Dr. Grace Olsen      Mr. Luis Flores
- Always capitalize the word *I*.  
Then I knocked on the door.
- Begin the names of pets with a capital letter.  
Smoky      Ruff      Curly

#### Names of Places

- Begin each important word of the name of a town, city, state, and country with a capital letter.  
Durango, Colorado      New York City      Iceland
- Begin each important word in the names of streets and their abbreviations with capital letters.  
Third Avenue (or Ave.)      Jackson Boulevard (or Blvd.)

#### Names of Days, Months, and Holidays

- Begin the name of a day of the week or its abbreviation with a capital letter.  
Sunday      Sun.      Thursday      Thurs.
- Begin the name of a month or its abbreviation with a capital letter.  
August      Aug.      December      Dec.
- Begin each important word in the name of a holiday or special day with a capital letter.  
Lincoln's Birthday      Election Day      Labor Day

### **Titles of Books, Stories, Poems, and Reports**

- Use a capital letter to begin the first, last, and all important words in the title of a book, report, story, poem, song, magazine, newspaper, record album, or television show.

Black Beauty (book)

San Francisco Chronicle (newspaper)

"I Never Saw a Purple Cow" (poem)

## **Punctuation**

### **Period**

- Use a period at the end of a declarative or imperative sentence.  
Molly is getting on the bus.  
Please watch her.
- Use a period after an abbreviation.  
Sept.      Rd.      Sen.
- Use a period after an initial.  
Jason R. Eldridge

### **Question Mark**

- Use a question mark at the end of an interrogative sentence.  
Will you take Ellie with you?

### **Exclamation Point**

- Use an exclamation point at the end of an exclamatory sentence.  
Wow, what wonderful news!